PEUGEOT

OWNER'S MANUAL

3008
5008

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 3008/e-3008 or Peugeot 5008/e-5008.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.
We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as with the Service Booklet.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

Link to company app and website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:

GET IT ON Google Play

Download on the App Store

OBTAIN THE COMPLETE OWNER'S MANUAL:

ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Scan this QR code for direct access.
– the language,
– the vehicle and body style,
– the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of first registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a PEUGEOT dealer.

1 Introduction

Introduction 2
How To Use This Manual 3
Propulsion Type 4
Vehicle modifications - alterations 6

2 Getting to know your vehicle

Keys 8
Proximity Keyless Entry and Start 12
Vehicle Security System 14
Doors 16
Windows 17
Mirrors 18
User Memory Settings 19
Head Restraints 20
Seats 21
Third row seats 26
Safety belts 27
Airbag system 31
Child Restraints 33
Steering Wheel 46
Ignition Switch 47
Wipers and Washers 47
Exterior Lights 50
Interior Lights 58
Sunroof 59
Interior Storage-Interior Features 60
Tailgate 66

3 Dashboard instruments and control

Instrument panel overview 71
Instrument Cluster 73
Warning, lights, indicators and messages 77
Climate Controls 90
Touch screen and Info Display 96

4 Infotainment System

Introduction about Infotainment system 99
Radio 104
Multimedia System 106

5 Starting & Operating

Starting Procedure 119
Brakes 123
Transmission 126
Driving modes 133
Fuel 135
Charging 136
Vehicle Loading 149
Trailer Towing 150
Driving tips 157

6 ADAS -Advanced Driving Assistance Systems

Introduction To Assistance Systems 162
Detection Sensors 163
Speed Control Assistance System 165
Collision avoidance assistance system 172
Vehicle Stability Assistance System 174
Braking performance assistance system 176
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System 177
Lane Keeping Assistance System 178
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System 191
Driver's Attention Assistance System 198
Active Emergency Stop Assist 200
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System 205
Utility Assistance Features 205

7 In case of emergency

Hazard Warning Lights 213
Assist And SOS 213
ASSISTANCE 214
Warning triangle 215
Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 215
Tyre Repair Kit 222
Jump Starting 224
Event Data Recorder 228

8 Maintenance and vehicle care

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care 230
Scheduled Servicing 230
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts 231
Engine Compartment 232
Vehicle Maintenance 233
Fuses 235
Light Replacement 236
Tires and Wheels 237
Vehicle storage 239
Bodywork-Exterior Care 240
Interior care 240

9 Technical Specifications

Vehicle Identification 242
Vehicle Data 242
Wheels and Tires 253

10 Customer Information

Declaration of Conformity 255
Vehicle data recording and privacy 257

Introduction

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (ICE and/or electricity) and CO2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
With a Hybrid 48 V engine, engine braking is more efficient. Anticipate slowing down as much as you can and, if possible, favour deceleration with engine braking in order to charge the traction battery, to increase all-electric driving and to reduce fuel consumption.
With an EAT8 gearbox, with the gear selector in mode **D**, and except in Sport mode, favour "freewheeling" by gradually lifting your foot fully off the accelerator pedal in order to save fuel.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down.
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat and heated steering wheel as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tires and refit summer tires.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tire pressures regularly, with the tires cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tires on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Optimizing the driving range of electrified vehicles

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route profile, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.

Favour the **ECO** and **CHARGE** zones of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Hybrid 48 V vehicles

Maximise the vehicle's inertia by releasing the accelerator pedal so that the vehicle slows down by itself (e.g. when driving downhill or approaching a traffic light).
When the accelerator pedal is released, provided that the slider on the power indicator in the instrument panel is still moving in the **CHARGE** zone, energy recovery is optimal.
Energy recovery makes it possible to make efficient use of the "passive" phases of driving (deceleration).
The recovered energy is used to recharge the traction battery and is then used for all-electric driving or further acceleration.
When the traction battery is almost full, the energy recovery is gradually reduced.

PHEV vehicles

Connect the vehicle as soon as possible.
Anticipate slowing down as much as possible and, if possible, favour decelerations with the regenerative braking function activated (power indicator in the CHARGE zone).
With the vehicle connected, carry out temperature pre-conditioning before setting off.
To optimise consumption during a journey:

- Program a destination into the vehicle's GPS navigation system.
- Select the **Hybrid** driving mode.
- Make sure that the battery charge level is close to maximum.
- Avoid using the e-Save function.
- Use the heating/air conditioning system wisely.

BEV vehicles

Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the **"CHARGE"** zone.
The intensity of the regenerative braking level can be varied using the steering-mounted paddles.
Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

Geofencing (PHEV)

While driving, the vehicle continuously detects traffic in low-emission areas or restricted traffic areas.
When entering one of these areas, the vehicle automatically switches to BEV driving mode, if the state of charge of the traction battery is sufficient.

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Some descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Symbols Key

Danger
Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury.Disregarding this information may endanger life.

Warning
Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Tip
Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Warning
For any work on your vehicle, contact a member of the Manufacturer's dealer network, hereinafter referred to as a 'dealer', or a qualified workshop.

NOTE:

Symbols

Safety warning

Tip Symbols

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

This allows the specific features of your vehicle to be identified:

3008

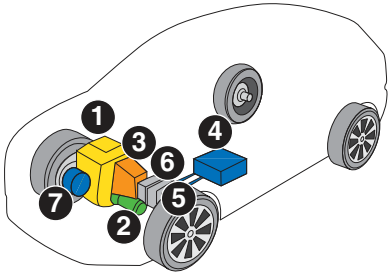
5008

Propulsion Type

Internal Combustion Engine (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - ICE - only.

Hybrid 48 V



1. Petrol engine
2. Electric motor
3. 6-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)
4. 48 V traction battery
5. 12 V accessory battery
6. DC/DC converter
7. Belt starter

The 48 V hybrid technology requires no connection to charge the traction battery.

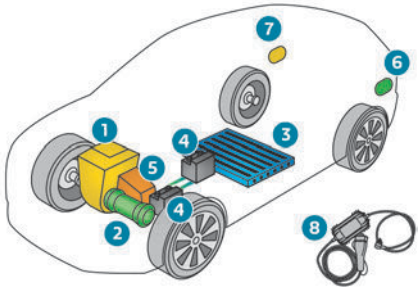
The **Hybrid 48 V system** does not operate continuously, but is activated according to the state of the vehicle, the state of charge of the traction battery, the thermal comfort of the passenger compartment (switching on the heating or air conditioning), the driving conditions (acceleration, deceleration, braking, engine start-up) and the road conditions (uphill, downhill):

- The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
- In normal driving, the petrol engine and electric motor work together or separately to optimise fuel consumption and electrical energy or to charge the traction battery.
- During the acceleration phases, the electric motor provides an additional boost to reach the torque needed as fast as possible and to improve the acceleration at low speed.
- During the deceleration phases, the electric motor charges the traction battery, using the inertia of the vehicle.
- The driving in all-electric is possible for parking manoeuvring, for 20 mph (30 km/h) speed zones in city, on urban and country roads with smooth driving and on motorways in slight deceleration or downhill.

The electric motor is integrated into the automatic gearbox.
The DC/DC converter provides the link between the 12 V accessory power supply and the 48 V traction power supply.

The belt starter restarts the petrol engine after driving in all-electric.

PHEV System

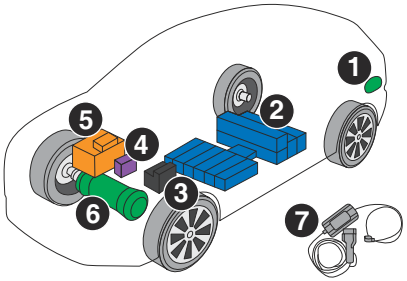


1. Petrol engine
2. Electric motor
3. Traction battery
4. 12 V accessories batteries
5. 7-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS7)
6. Charging flap
7. Fuel filler flap
8. Domestic charging cable

The **rechargeable hybrid** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of the electric motor, which drive the front wheels (traction).
The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to the driving mode selected and the driving conditions.

The electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **Electric** mode, and in **Hybrid** mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during starting and acceleration phases.
The electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

BEV Vehicle



1. Charging connectors
2. Traction battery
3. Accessory battery
4. Heat pump
5. On-board charger
6. Electric motor
7. Charging cable

The charging connectors **1** enable **3** types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.
The heat pump **4** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.
The on-board charger **5** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.
The electric motor **6** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Energy saving mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.

After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

Tip
If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

Warning
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery/ Accessories battery/**, refer to the corresponding section.

Vehicle modifications - alterations

The Manufacturer recommends the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. The Manufacturer cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval. Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications and modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the manufacturer warranty. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Accessories Purchased By The Owner

If after buying the car, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact a dealer, whose personnel will check whether the electrical system of the car is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful conventional battery.

Warning
Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents.

Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

Electric Devices Installation

Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label: The Manufacturer authorises the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialised centre, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

Warning
Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car.

This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.
The Manufacturer all not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by the Manufacturer and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

Radio Transmitting Equipment Installation

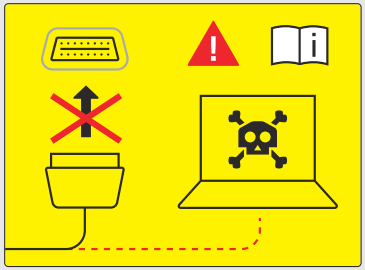
Radio transmitter equipment (car mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used

inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

Caution

Installing electrical accessories

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle.
Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.



As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorized dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorized by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

Keys

Danger
Never remove the key from the ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

Warning
Never switch off the ignition before having completely immobilised the vehicle.
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Radio Remote Control Function

The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Unlocking/Locking the boot.
- Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Closing the windows.
- Closing the sunroof.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

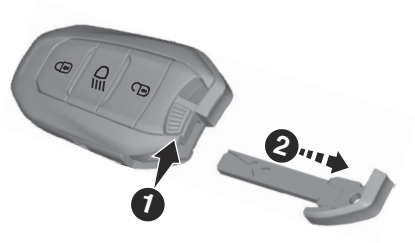
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the Back-up procedures, refer to the corresponding section.

Electronic key system

Built-in key

Using the remote control built-in key, you can perform the following operations (depending on version):

- ► Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- ► Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- ► Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



- ► To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Warning
Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

Unlocking the vehicle

Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Complete unlocking

- ► If the selective unlocking is deactivated, press the unlocking button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door

- ► Press the unlocking button.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (ICE or Hybrid 48 V).
The driver's door is unlocked (PHEV).
The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (BEV).

- ► Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.
Complete or selective unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and the lighting of the daytime running lamps.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorised operation is activated.

- With a motorised tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.
- With a non-motorised tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the boot and partially open the tailgate.

When selective unlocking of the tailgate is activated, the doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked.
If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

Tip
If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button partially opens the tailgate.
To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Locking the vehicle

Depending on version, the activation/ deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Normal locking

- Press the locking button.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

Tip
An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

Warning
Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

- Press the locking button.
- Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

For the vehicles equipped with the Proximity Keyless Entry and Start system, a double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

Closing the windows and sunroof

An audible signal sounds in the passenger compartment before the start of movement to warn any occupants.

- To completely close the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof, press the locking button for more than 2 seconds.
- Press again to stop closing.

Warning
Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partially open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection.
For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:

- The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
- The door mirror spotlights come on.
- The courtesy lights come on.

▶ Make a long press on this button.

Warning

Remote control

The remote control is a sensitive, highfrequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.

Warning

Anti-theft protection

Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.

Warning

Locking the vehicle

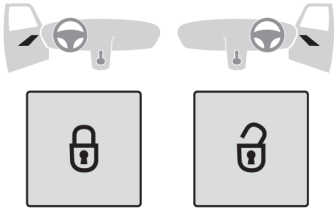
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Tip

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Central Locking System



Manual

▶ Press these buttons to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

Warning
Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

Tip

When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

▶ Press the button until a confirmation message appears.

Tip

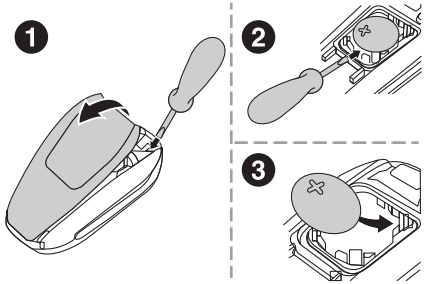
Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.
Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Battery Replacement

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



- ► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
- ► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- ► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
- ► Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Restriction
Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Warning
This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

Warning
Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type! Replace the battery with the same type.

Warning
Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

EMERGENCY KEY

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

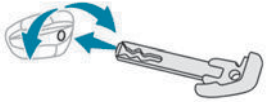
Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ► Insert the key into the door lock.
- ► Turn the key towards the front or the rear to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Tip
If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

Warning
In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

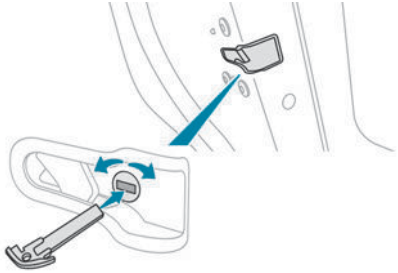
Front left-hand door

- Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock or unlock the door.

Unlocking

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking



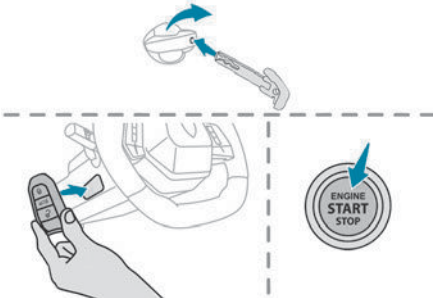
- Open the doors.
- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

- Gently insert the key into the latch located in the door lock, then turn the latch an eighth of a turn towards the outside of the door.
- Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



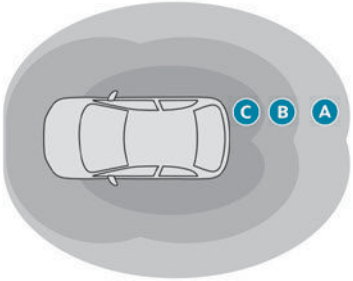
- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- **With an automatic gearbox or drive selector**, while in mode **P,** depress the brake pedal.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **START/STOP** button.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Proximity Keyless Entry and Start

This is a Keyless Entry and Start system.
It enables automatic vehicle locking/unlocking simply by detecting the electronic key.

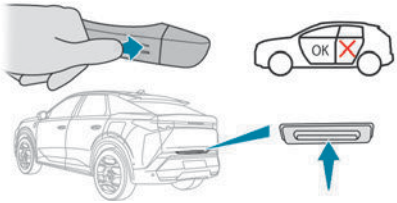
As long as the driver has the electronic key on their person, the vehicle unlocks as they approach and locks when they walk away.
Key recognition zones:



Zone A: welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 2 and 5 metres from the vehicle).
Zone B: automatic locking on moving away from the vehicle (about 2 metres from the vehicle).
Zone C: automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 metres from the vehicle).

Automatic functions are configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Unlocking the vehicle



Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Complete unlocking

The vehicle (doors and boot) unlocks:

- ▶ Either automatically as the driver approaches in zone C, if the automatic functions are activated.
- ▶ Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle or the button on the boot.

Unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and lighting of the daytime running lamps.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Tip
If the electronic key remains around the vehicle (zones **A**, **B** or **C**) for more than 15 minutes without action, the automatic functions are deactivated. To unlock or lock the vehicle, use the remote control or press the driver's door handle.
If using the door handle does not lock/unlock the vehicle, bring the electronic key closer and repeat the desired action.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door

It operates:

- ▶ Either automatically when approaching the driver's door, if the automatic functions are activated.
- ▶ Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (ICE or Hybrid 48 V).
The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (PHEV or BEV).

- ▶ Once inside the vehicle, with the driver's door closed, to unlock all accesses, press the central locking button twice or pull the opening control on any door.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

The tailgate unlocks automatically as you approach the rear of the vehicle.

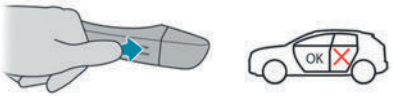
- ▶ Press the tailgate control to open the boot.

The doors remain locked.
After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing.

Locking the vehicle

Depending on version, the activation/deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Normal locking



Ignition off, with the doors and boot closed, the vehicle locks:

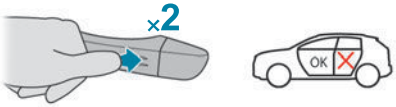
- ▶ Either automatically, upon leaving zone **B**, if the automatic functions are activated.
- ▶ Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

Locking is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators, and by a double audible signal when the vehicle is locked upon walking away.
It is not possible to lock the vehicle if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Deadlocking

Warning
Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- ▶ Ignition off, gently press the driver's door handle to lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press it again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

A double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

Tip
If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place.

Tip
If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to the vehicle, the alarm is automatically reactivated (if previously activated).

Tip

Motorised tailgate

After closing completely, the vehicle will lock automatically even if the electronic key is outside the recognition areas.

Tip
Automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the touch screen.
For more information on **Mirrors**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

Warning
In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery:
– The unlocking on approach function (zone **C**) automatically switches to hibernation mode after several days (approximately one week) without being used. To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on the driver's door handle. The next time the vehicle is started, the automatic unlocking and locking functions will be reactivated.
– If the welcome lighting is triggered several times in succession without the vehicle subsequently being started, it will be deactivated.
– All "hands-free" functions switch to hibernation mode after 21 days without being used. To restore these functions, unlock the vehicle using the remote control and start the engine. The door mirrors unfold only when the ignition is switched on.

Tip

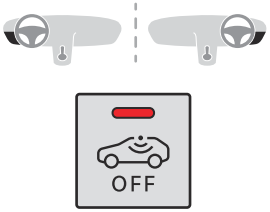
Electrical interference

The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

Vehicle Security System

Anti-theft Alarm System

(Depending on version)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

Tip
When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Tip

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced

or even suspended during temperature preconditioning sequences.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

Warning

Work on the alarm system

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- ▶ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the driver's door handle.

The monitoring system is also activated when the driver moves away from the vehicle.
When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

Warning

Door, boot or bonnet

If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Warning

Sunroof

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

Tip

Central glasses holder

Make sure that the glasses holder, located in the roof console, is closed before getting out of the vehicle and activating the alarm.

Deactivation

- ▶ Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:

Short press.

or

Long press.

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing one of the front door handles.

The monitoring system is also deactivated when the driver approaches the vehicle.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator light in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

Tip

After unlocking using the remote control

If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically activated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- ▶ Slightly open window.
- ▶ Washing the vehicle.
- ▶ Changing a wheel.
- ▶ Towing the vehicle.
- ▶ Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
- ▶ Get out of the vehicle.
- ▶ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

Tip
To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.

► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm. The indicator light in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the front left-hand door lock.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Immobilizer

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Doors

Manual Door Openings

From outside

► After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

From inside

► Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

Tip
With selective unlocking activated:
– Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
– Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Manual Door Locks

If a door is not properly closed, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message if the engine is running, and an audible signal when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Power Door Locks

If a door is not properly closed, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message if the engine is running, and an audible signal when the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 mph (10 km/h).

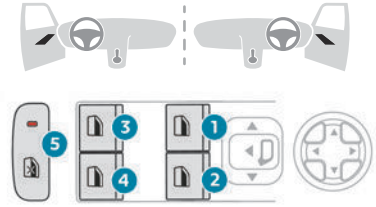
Tip

Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Windows

Power Windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Left-hand rear
4. Right-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats

Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

Tip
The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.
After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Tip

Overtaking of the anti-pinch

After triggering the anti-pinch, check that there are no obstacles blocking the movement of the window.
Try to close the window again.
If the window closing is interrupted by the anti-pinch 3 times in a row (max. 10 seconds between each action), the anti-pinch function becomes inoperable.
Without this protection, the window can only be closed manually - risk of injury!

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

For your children's safety, ignition on or engine on, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

Tip
Automatic window closing is no longer available, only manual closing is possible. Remote window closing with the electronic key is also no longer available in this case.

The anti-pinch function is inoperable during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

► Pull the control until the window is fully closed.

► Release the control, then pull it again for at least one second.

Warning
If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.

When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Rear Window

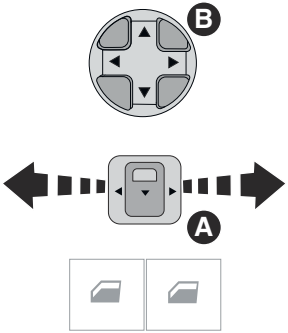
Windshield

Warning
In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windshield around the camera.
Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Mirrors

Power Outside Mirrors

Electric adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to its central position.

Folding Mirrors

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.

- From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.
- Pull control **A** backwards.
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Tip
If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position and then pull it rearwards.

Tip
The automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.
Before using an automatic car wash, fold the mirrors.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

Depending on version, this function allows you to automatically tilt the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.
With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.
They each return to their original positions:
– A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
– Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When the engine is switched off.

It can be activated/deactivated in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Tip
The inclination of the mirrors is different between the two sides. It is more important on the passenger side to show more of the ground.

Heated Mirrors

The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/ defrosting of the rear screen.For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

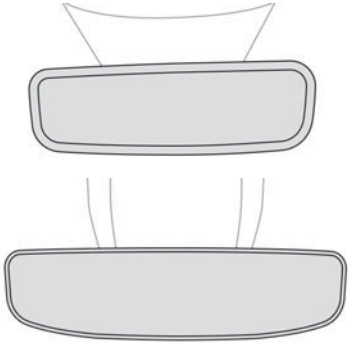
Warning
As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Inside Rearview Mirror

Electrochrome interior rear view mirror



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

Tip
To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is inoperative if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

User Memory Settings

Driver Memory Settings

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.
It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors.

Using buttons 1/2/M

- ► Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- ► Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.
- ► Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation.

Recalling a stored position

Warning
While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

With the ignition on or engine running

To recall the corresponding position using the buttons:

► Press button **1** or **2.**

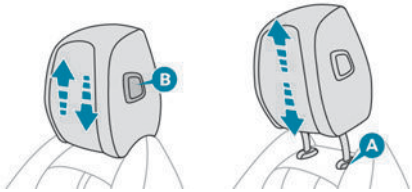
An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Head Restraints

Head Restraints Position

Front Head Restraints

Adjusting the height



Upwards

► Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards

► Depending on equipment, press lug **A** or button **B** and then, while still pressing, lower the head restraint.

> **Tip**
> The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

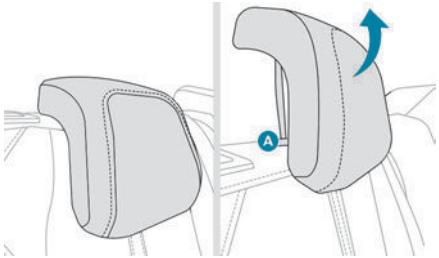
► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
► Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
► Push the head restraint fully down.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
► Adjust the height of the head restraint.

> **Warning**
> Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Rear Head Restraints



They have two positions:
– A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:

► Pull the head restraint fully up.

– A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:

► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint

► Release the backrest using control **1.**
► Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.

► Push the head restraint fully down.

► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

Warning
Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Seats

Front Seat Position

Warning
For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- head restraint height.
- seat backrest angle.
- seat cushion height.
- longitudinal seat position.
- steering wheel height and reach.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors.

Warning
Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Warning
Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

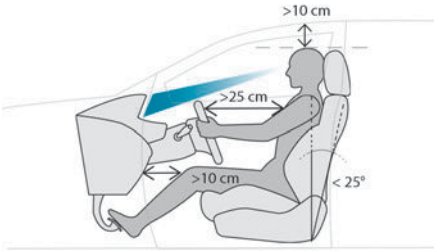
Warning
Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

Warning
Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

Correct seating position

Adopting a good driving position contributes to improving driver comfort and protection.
It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.
Certain seat adjustments described in this section depend on the trim level and the country in which the vehicle is sold.

Driver's side



Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the seat cushion height so that your eyes are level with the centre of the windscreen.
The head should be at a minimum distance of 10 cm from the roof.
Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you can fully depress the pedals with legs slightly flexed.
The distance between the knees and the dashboard should be at least 10 cm, for easy access to the dashboard controls.
Adjust the backrest angle to as vertical a position as possible; never tilt it more than 25°.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.
Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.
Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of the spine.
Adjust the steering wheel reach so that it is at least 25 cm from the sternum and you can hold it with your arms slightly bent.
Adjust the steering wheel height so that it does not obstruct the information displayed on the instrument panel.

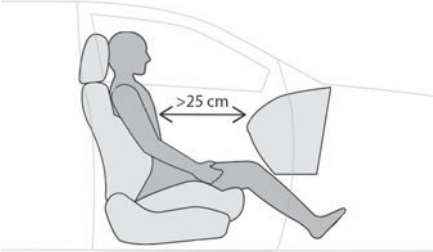
Warning
As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

Tip

Electrically adjustable seats

Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

Passenger's side



Sit fully back in the seat with the pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Before moving off

Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.
Fasten the seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of the shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across the pelvis.
Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

Tip

Electric door mirrors

Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

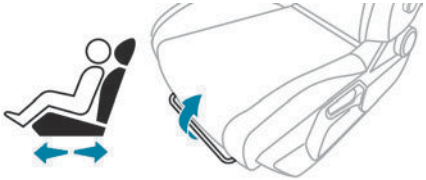
When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the 'quarter to three' position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

Warning
Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving. Always keep your feet on the floor.

Manual Front Seats

Longitudinal



► Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

► Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

Warning
After adjustment, try to move the seat backwards and forwards to ensure that the seat is properly locked in place.

Height

► Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

Backrest angle

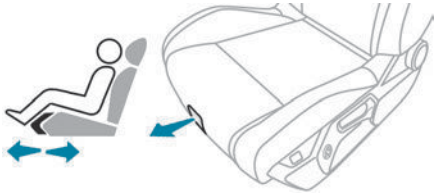
► Turn the knob to obtain the desired angle.

Lumbar

"AGR" certified seats

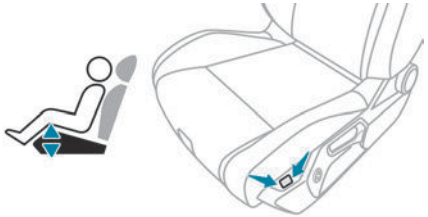
In addition to the manual adjustments, this seat features manual adjustment of the seat cushion length, electric adjustment of the seat cushion angle and the electric lumbar adjustment.

Seat cushion length



▶ Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the cushion forwards or backwards.

Seat cushion angle



▶ Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Lumbar

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

▶ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.

▶ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Power Front Seats

Warning
For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

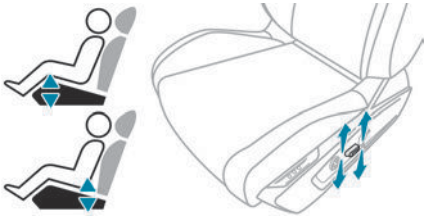
Tip
To avoid draining the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

This seat also features the manual adjustment of the seat cushion length and electric lumbar support adjustment mentioned previously.

Longitudinal

▶ Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle



▶ Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

▶ Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Backrest angle

▶ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Heated Seats / Ventilated Seats

The heating function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

Activation/Deactivation

▶ Press the centre button of the lumbar adjustment controls.

or

▶ Press the **Seats** application.

▶ Select the **Heating Functions** or **Ventilated Seats** tab.

▶ Select the driver or passenger seat.

The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorised settings.

▶ If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seat** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.
The function status is not memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Changing settings

▶ In the **Heating Functions** or **Ventilated Seats** page, select the relevant seat.

▶ Select an intensity from the three preset levels: **"1"** (Low), **"2"** (Normal) or **"3"** (High).

The settings are memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Restriction
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

Warning
Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Massage Seats

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.
This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start.

Activation/Deactivation

▶ Press the centre button of the lumbar adjustment controls.

or

▶ Press the **Seats** application.

▶ Select the **Massage** tab.

▶ Select the driver or passenger seat.

The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorised settings.

▶ If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seat** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.
The function status is not memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Changing settings

▶ In the **Massage** page, select the seat concerned.

▶ Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: **"1"** (Low), **"2"** (Normal) or **"3"** (High).

▶ Select another type of massage from those offered.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and memorised when the ignition is switched off.
Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes at rest.
The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle.

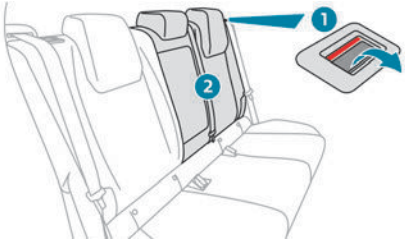
Folding Rear Seats

Folding the backrests

Warning
Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

- ▶ Lower the head restraints.
- ▶ If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- ▶ Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
- ▶ Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles. Release them so that the backrest can be moved.



- ▶ Press the backrest release grip **1.**
- ▶ Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

Tip
When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

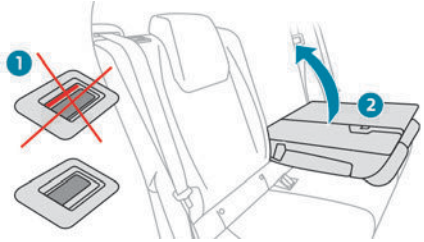
Central backrest

The central section of the backrest may be folded down independently of the side sections.

- ▶ Check in advance that the rear armrest is not folded down and that the central head restraint is not raised.
- ▶ From inside the passenger compartment or from the boot, pull on the strap to release.
- ▶ Fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.
- ▶ When repositioning, lift up the backrest fully until it locks.

Repositioning the backrests

Warning
First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ▶ Put the backrest 2 in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ▶ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip 1.
- ▶ Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

Warning
Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

Heated seats

On/Off

The control buttons for each side seat are located at the rear of the centre console.

- ▶ Press the button corresponding to the seat.
- ▶ Each press changes the heating level; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on.
- ▶ To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lamps are off.

The function status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.
The function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

Restriction
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

Warning
Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

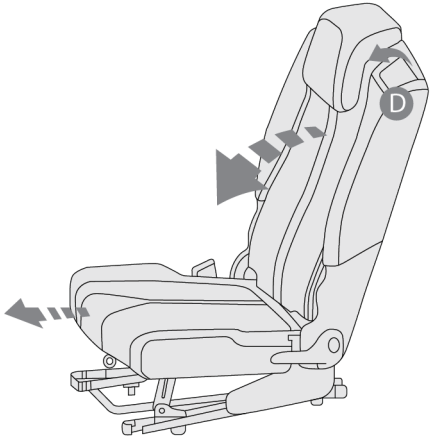
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Third row seats

Warning
Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Accessing third row seats

The third row seats are accessed via the second row side seats.



From the outside or from the third row seats:

► paddle **D** and guide the backrest forwards to tilt it and move the seat forwards.Pull

To put the seat back in place:

► Straighten the backrest until the seat locks.

Whatever the initial position of the seat, it is placed automatically a third of the way along the longitudinal adjustment range in order to preserve enough space for passengers in the third row seats.

Warning
If this system fails (paddle **D**),the third row passengers can also get out after having folded the backrest of the second row seats using strap.
Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

Third row head restraints

Adjustment

For more information on **Rear head restraints,** including their adjustment, refer to the corresponding section ⇨.

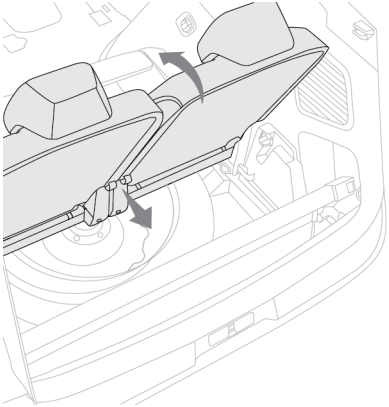
Warning
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Folding third row backrests

Folding third row backrests from the boot:

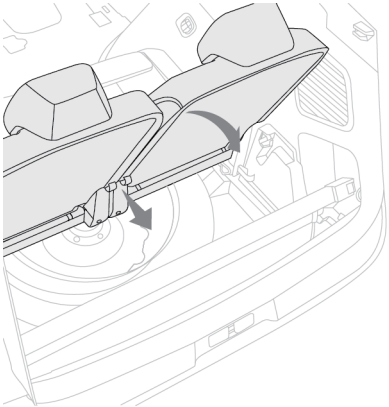
► Pull the straps in the middle of the row to unlock the desired seat and give the backrest a slight push forwards.

It is possible to fold 1 or 2 backrest.



Repositionning third row backrests

Straighten the backrest until it locks.



Safety belts

Seat belts introduction

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Progressive force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, taking their stature into account, thus improving their protection.

Warning

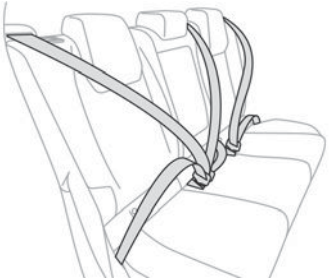
In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

Each of the front seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a progressive force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

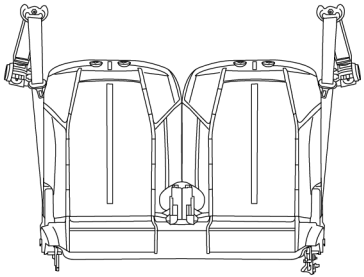
Fastening

- ► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
- ► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

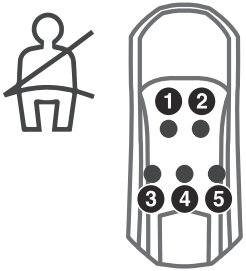
- ► Press the red button on the buckle.
- ► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

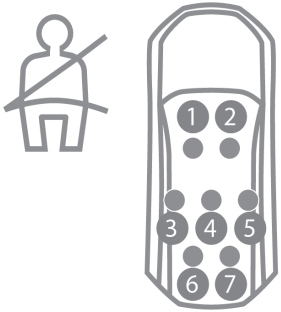
Third row seatbelts



Third row seatbelts are always visible and fixed.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts





1 Front left seat belt indicator lamp

2 Front right seat belt indicator lamp

3 Second row left seat belt indicator lamp

4 Second row centre seat belt indicator lamp

5 Second row right seat belt indicator lamp

6 Third row left seat belt indicator lamp

7 Third row right seat belt indicator lamp

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification indicator lamps

The red indicator lamps (**1** to **5** or **7**) on the instrument panel indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.

Seat belt fastened/unfastened alert

It comes on in red on the instrument panel as soon as the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.
In this case, the vehicle symbol containing the belt indicator lamps for each seat also lights up red.

Front seat belt not fastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator lamp (**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6** or **7**) comes on in red. At a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamp flash, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator lamp remains on until the seat belt has been fastened again.

Rear seat belt not fastened alert

When the ignition is switched on, if one of the rear passengers has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding indicator lamp (3, 4 or 5) comes on in red for 1 minute.

Seat belt unfastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator lamp (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) comes on in red. At a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamp flash, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator lamp remains on until the seat belt has been fastened again.

With the ignition on, if the driver or a passenger fastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator lamp (**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6** or **7**) comes on in green on the instrument panel.

With the ignition on, if one of the front or rear passenger seats is detected as being unoccupied, the corresponding indicator lamp (**2**,**3**, **4**, **5**, **6** or **7**) comes on in grey on the instrument panel.

When there are no longer any not fastened/unfastened alerts, the warning lamp goes off and the green or grey indicator lamps remain on for around 30 seconds, then go off.

Warning
The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Warning

Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted
- only be used to secure one person
- not show signs of tearing or fraying.
- not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Warning

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

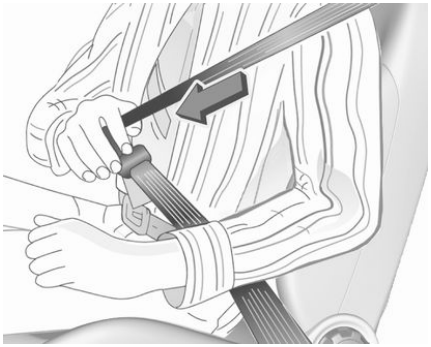
Warning

Maintenance

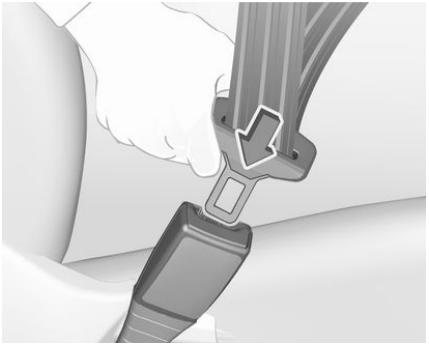
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Three Points Seat Belt

Fasten



Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.

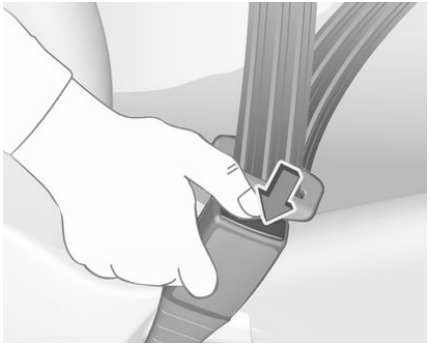


Loose or bulky clothing prevents the seat belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

Warning
The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder.
Height adjustment if applicable.

Unfasten



To release seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

Using the seat belt while pregnant

Warning
The lap seat belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Airbag system

Airbag system introduction

General information

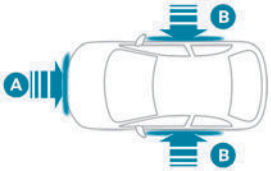
This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

Warning

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



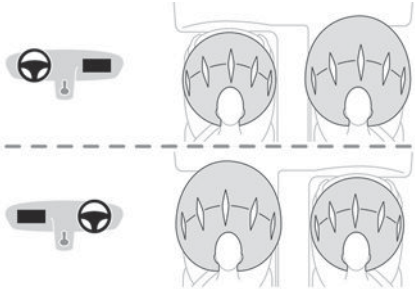
A. Front impact zone

B. Side impact zone

Tip

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front Airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They are deployed, except for the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*[1], in the event of a violent front impact applied to all or part of front impact zone **A.**
The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

[1] For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Lateral Airbags

This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of
This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B.**
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain Airbags

This system helps provide greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B.**The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Airbag System Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Warning
In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Malfunction

Warning

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Warning

Lateral airbags

Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof.

Child Restraints

Tip
The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **Children ageing less than 15 months must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

Tip
It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3 years old.
– "**forward facing**" over the age of 3 years old.

Warning
Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Warning
An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Warning

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Warning

Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:

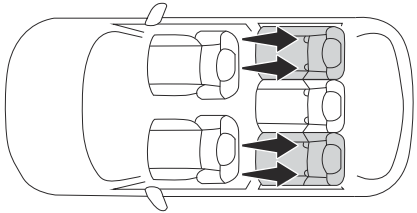
- a child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

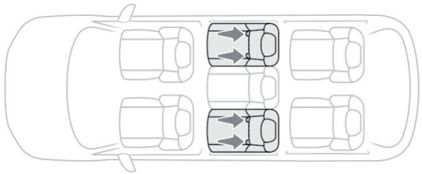
Seat Belt Installation

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened.

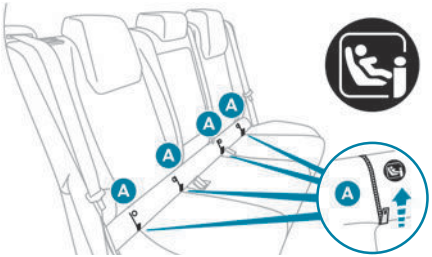
Isofix Anchorage Connectors

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:

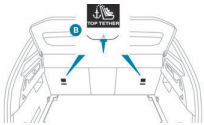


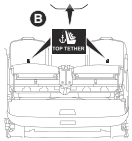


The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:
– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



These rings are located behind zips.
The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.
– One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.





This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

► Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).

- ▶ Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

Tip
When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

Warning
An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

Tip
For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

I-Size Child Seats

i-Size child seats i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A.**
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B.**
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Child Seats Recommended

"RÖMER Baby-Safe 3 i-Size" **Size: 40 - 83 cm**
From birth to 15 months (up to 13 kg) With or without its ISOFIX base. Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size" **Size: 76 - 105 cm**
From 15 months to 4 years (from 9 to 22 kg) Installed with ISOFIX and Top Tether mountings. Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

"RÖMER KidFix i-Size" **Size: 100 - 150 cm**
From 3.5 to 12 years (from 15 to 36 kg) Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. **Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services** **We recommend using child seat with the backrest.If the backrest is removed for child over 135 cm,the secure guard must also be removed.**

Tip
Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

Tip
For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

Tip
Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct.
Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

Child Restraint Installation Location

Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats for 3008

	In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (b)			**Rear seats (b) row 2**		
	1	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**
	3	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(c)**	Activated "ON" **(d)**			
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e) (g) (h)**	no	yes **(e)**	yes **(e) (i) (j)**	yes **(e)**
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f) (g) (h)**		yes **(f)**	yes **(f) (i) (j)**	yes **(f)**
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a **Top Tether** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (b)			**Rear seats (b)**		
	1	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**
	3	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(c)**	Activated "ON" **(d)**			
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no	no	no
"**Rearward facing**" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no		R3 **(k) (l)**	no	R3 **(k) (l)**
"**Forward facing**" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no		F3 **(n)**	no	F3 **(n)**
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	B3 **(h) (m) (n)**		B3 **(n)**	B3 **(i) (m) (n)**	B3 **(n)**

Rules:

– A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2.**
– A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2.**
– A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1.**
– A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2.**
– A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible with **B2.**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

(c) To install a **"rearward facing"** child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated **"OFF".**

(d) Only a **"forward facing"** child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated **"ON".**

(e) For a **"rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing"** universal child seat (**U**) for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

(f) For a **"forward facing"** universal child seat **(UF)** in groups **1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) For a seat with height adjustment, adjust it to the highest position.

(h) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully back longitudinal position.

(i) If a child restraint system is installed on the centre rear passenger seat, the left rear passenger seat is blocked and MUST NOT be occupied.

(j) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

(k) Adjust the headrest to the maximum height position or remove it.

(l) Adjust the seat in front of the seat with the child restraint system to the maximum height position.

(m) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

(n) Remove the headrest.

Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats for 5008

	Seat numbers							
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) row 2			Rear seats(b) row 3	
	1	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**9**
	3	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**9**
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(c)**	Activated "ON" **(d)**					
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e) (g) (h)**	no	yes **(e)**	yes **(e) (i) (j)**	yes **(e)**	no	no
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f) (g) (h)**		yes **(f)**	yes **(f) (i) (j)**	yes **(f)**	no	no
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes	no	no
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes	no	no
Position equipped with a **Top Tether** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes	no	no
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		L2(**j**)	no	L1(**j**)	no	no

"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	R3 (**k**) (**l**)	no	R3(**k**) (**l**)	no	no
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	F3 (**n**)	no	F3(**n**)	no	no
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	B3 (**h**) (**m**) (**n**)	B3(**n**)	B3(**m**)(**n**)	B3(**n**)	B3(**m**)	B3(**m**)

Rules:

– A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2.**
– A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2.**
– A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1.**
– A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2.**
– A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible with **B2.**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

(c) To install a **"rearward facing"** child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated **"OFF".**

(d) Only a **"forward facing"** child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated **"ON".**

(e) For a **"rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing"** universal child seat (**U**) for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

(f) For a **"forward facing"** universal child seat **(UF)** in groups **1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) For a seat with height adjustment, adjust it to the highest position.

(h) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully back longitudinal position.

(i) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

(j) If a lateral facing child restraint system is installed on the outer seats of the 2nd seat row the use of the other seating positions in this row is excluded.

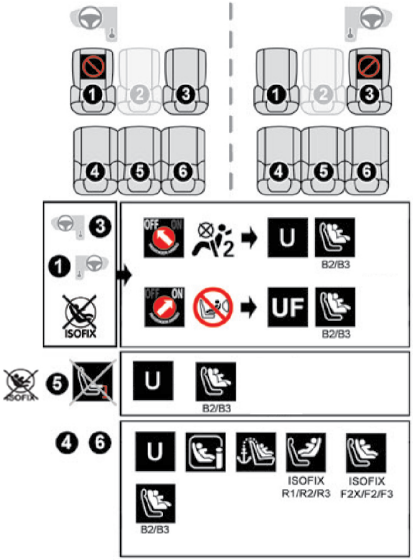
(k) Adjust the headrest to the maximum height position or remove it.

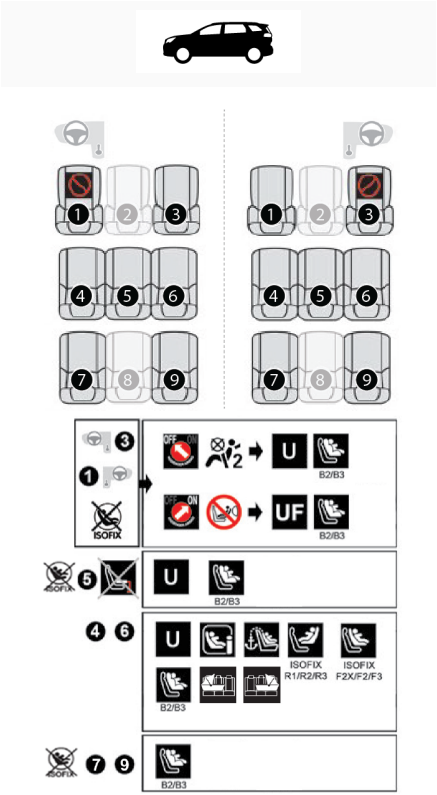
(l) Adjust the seat in front of the seat with the child restraint system to the maximum height position.

(m) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

(n) Remove the headrest.

ISOFIX mounting points





Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **de-activated.**

Front passenger airbag **ac-tivated.**

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved **"rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing"** (**U**) for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 to 150 cm in size.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1**, **2** and **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

Seat position authorised for the in-stallation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the in-stallation of a child seat with support leg.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchor-age point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **uni-versal ISOFIX child seat.**

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

– **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
– **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
– **R3**: **ISOFIX** large size child seat

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

– **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
– **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
– **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.

Booster child seat,using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

– **B2: reduced width booster seat.**

– **B3: full width booster seat.**

Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats".**

ISOFIX "carrycot" type child seat :

– **L1** : left-hand facing.
– **L2** : right-hand facing.

CHILD SEATS POSITION

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

Child seat at the front

- Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

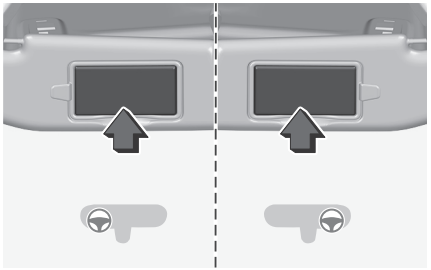
"Forward facing"

Warning
You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

Warning
The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

Danger
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Passenger airbag OFF

Warning
To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

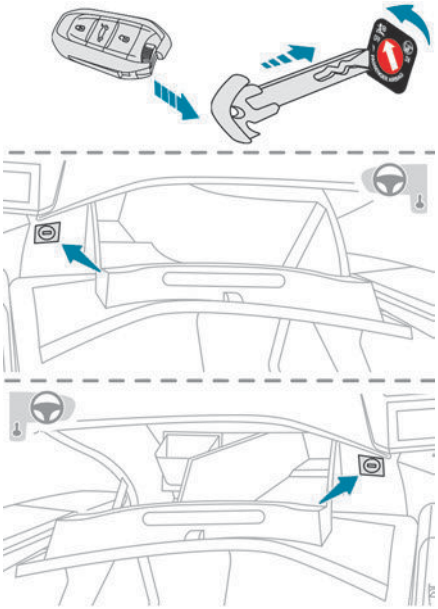
Warning

Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control

Installing a "rearward-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located inside the glove box.



With the ignition off:

- ▶ To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the **"OFF"** position.
- ▶ To reactivate it, turn the key to the **"ON"** position

When the ignition is switched on:

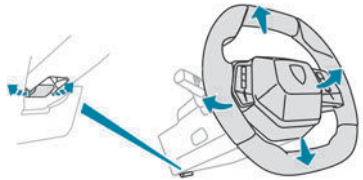
This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Adjustment



- When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach in a smooth way to suit your driving position and make sure the entire instrument cluster is visible.
- Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

Warning
For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Tip

PEUGEOT panoramic i-Cockpit®

Driving information and infotainment are available on two 10-inch screens side by side or on a dual 21-inch curved screen (depending on version).
The instrument panel information is visible above the steering wheel, for greater safety and driving comfort.
Adjust the steering wheel height so that it does not obstruct the instrument panel.

Steering Wheel Controls

Warning
If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Warning
In the event of a malfunction of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

Steering Wheel Heating

In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab.

Press to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is memorised each time the engine is switched off.

Horn

- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid 48 V, PHEV or BEV)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching (Electric), when driving in allelectric (Hybrid 48 V) or in **Electric** driving mode (PHEV).The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Ignition Switch

Warning
Never remove key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

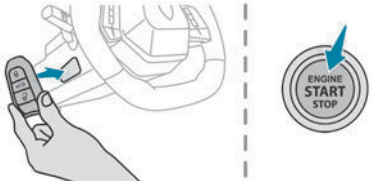
Warning
Never switch off the ignition before having completely immobilised the vehicle.
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Power Button

- Select mode **P** or **N** on the automatic gearbox, then depress the brake pedal.
- Press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed. In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the **"START/STOP"** button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

Back-up starting



- Insert the mechanical key (incorpored into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
- Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
- **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **START/STOP** button.

Warning
Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and, depending on transmission, first gear engaged or **P** selected.

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wiper And Washer

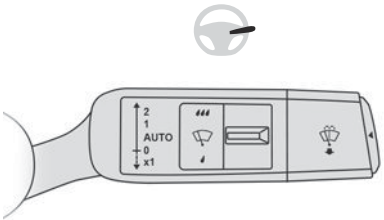
Tip
Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

Warning
Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Tip
After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Warning
Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).
The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windscreen washer system.

With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
AUTO	Automatic wiping
0	Switching off
x1	Single wipe

Tip
After the ignition has been switched off and the windscreen wiper is no longer operated (wiper control stalk set to **0** or no automatic wiping for more than 30 seconds), the wipers may move slightly at the foot of the windscreen.

Tip
In position **1** or **2**, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h).
When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

Single wipe

If the wiper control stalk is:

► In the **AUTO** position, pull the stalk briefly towards you then release it.

► In the **0** position, press briefly on the stalk then release it.

Pressing and holding triggers continuous wiping at the normal wiping speed.

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

Tip
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

Tip
With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

Warning
To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

With reverse gear engaged, the washing of the reversing camera is triggered by clicking on this button in the right side menu of the touch screen.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

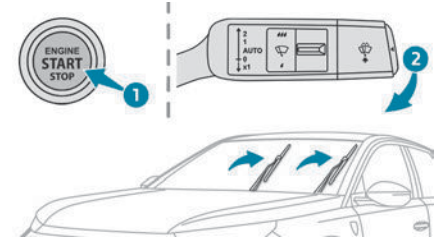
This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

Tip
To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water

- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



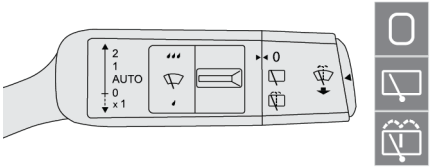
Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Removing/refitting at the rear



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

If the ignition has been switched off with the rear wiper active, operate the ring to reactivate wiping when the ignition is switched on again (unless the ignition was off for less than 1 minute).
The first rotation of the ring to the screenwash position triggers a single wipe. If the ring is then left in the intermittent wiping position, the rear wiper adopts a wiping speed dependent on that of the windscreen wipers and the speed of the vehicle.

Reverse

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.Off

In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing system, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Rear screenwash

► Turn the ring as far as it will go and hold it in position.

The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned. A final wiping cycle is performed when screen washing ends. An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

Automatic windscreen wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the front wipers work automatically and adapt to the intensity of precipitation depending on the sensitivity of the sensor selected.
The rainfall detection function uses a rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

Tip
In certain weather conditions (e.g. fog, frost, snow, projections on salty roads), the driver may have to return to manual wiping.

Switching on/off

To switch on:

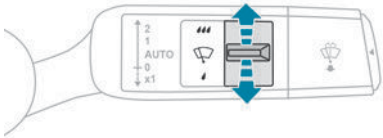
► Put the wiper control stalk in the **AUTO** position.

► Turn the ring to adjust the sensitivity of the sensor.

A wiping cycle, accompanied by the display of a message, confirms that the request has been taken into account.

► To switch off, put the wiper control stalk in another position or in the **0** position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



The lower position corresponds to the lowest sensitivity of the sensor.
The upper position corresponds to the highest sensitivity of the sensor.
The higher the sensitivity, the faster the system reacts and increases the wiping frequency.
A rotation of the ring from a lower position to a higher position triggers a confirmation wiping.

Tip
After the ignition has been switched off for more than 1 minute with the wiper control stalk in the **AUTO** position, when the ignition is switched on again:
– the system works, depending on the volume of rain detected, as soon as the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), if the outside temperature is below +3°C.
– the system works immediately, depending on the volume of rain detected, if the outside temperature is above +3°C.

Warning
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

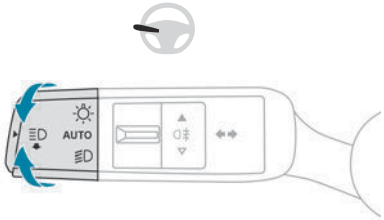
Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Exterior Lights

Lighting Controls

► To select the main lighting mode: turn the ring up/down to the desired position.

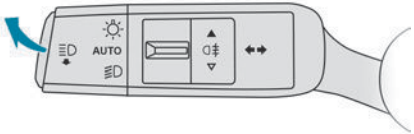


Sidelamps only

Automatic illumination of lamps/day-time running lamps

Dipped or main beam headlamps

Headlights



► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In **"AUTO"** and sidelamps mode, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

Display

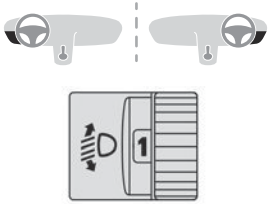
Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Low beam/high beam

Headlight Height Adjustment

Manual headlamp adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the headlamp beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

3008

0 **(Initial setting)**

Driver only or driver + front passenger

1 5 people

2 5 people + load in the boot

3 Driver only + load in the boot

4 Not used

5 Not used

6 Not used

5008

0 **(Initial setting)**

Driver only or driver + front passenger

1 Driver only or driver + front passenger + row 3

2 7 people

3 7 people + load in the boot

4 Driver only + load in the boot

5 Not used

6 Not used

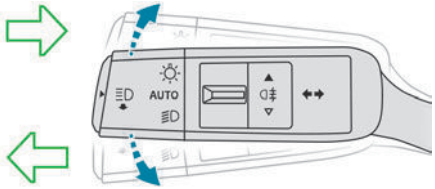
Automatic Peugeot Pixel LED headlamp adjustment

This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlamp beams according to different parameters (e.g. vehicle load).

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Do not touch the Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Turn Signals



▶ Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

Tip
If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

▶ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Parking lamps

(Depending on version)
Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

▶ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

▶ To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic Lighting

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

Tip

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
– If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
– Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Warning

Maintenance. Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Peugeot Pixel LED

Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the lighting control ring in the **AUTO** position and the function activated on the touchscreen, the system automatically switches between high and low beam headlights depending on the lighting conditions and adapts the high beam light distribution to the traffic situation using a camera located at the top of the windshield.
The Peugeot Pixel LED headlight consists of three LED modules.
The module dedicated to high beam lighting consists of LED pixels with independently controlled intensity. This technology allows the light distribution to be segmented into horizontal and vertical segments.
High beam lighting can be full when traffic conditions permit, or partial if vehicles are detected (ahead or oncoming).
The Peugeot Pixel LED system thus optimally illuminates the road without dazzling other road users.

Warning

The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

Tip

The system is active from 28 mph (45 km/h) and deactivates below 22 mph (35 km/h).

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Operation

If light conditions are low and permitting, the high beams are automatically switched on.
The high beams can be switched on completely, for example, when there is no vehicle present.
Or partially, for example, when there is a vehicle present. In this case, the LED pixels gradually turn on/off, segment by segment, depending on traffic conditions to maintain maximum illumination for the driver without dazzling other road users.
These warning lights illuminate in the instrument panel.
If light conditions are sufficient and/or conditions do not permit the high beams to be switched on,

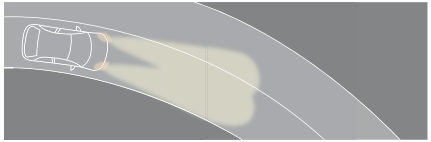
the dipped beams are maintained.

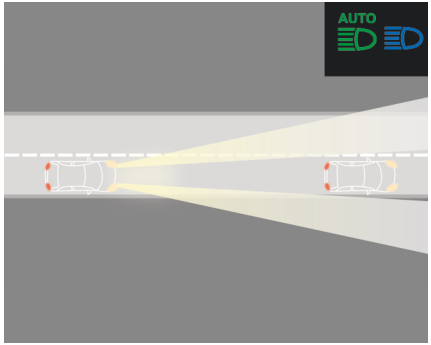
These warning lights illuminate in the instrument panel.

If all operating conditions are not met, the indicator light on the instrument panel lights

up in gray. The function is active but not available.

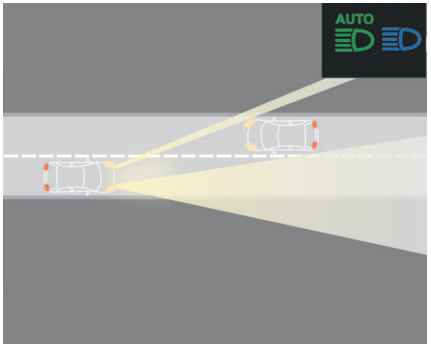
Followed vehicle





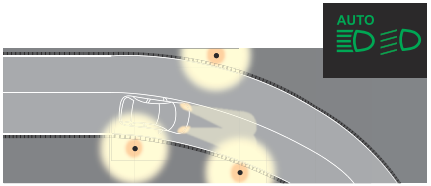
When approaching a vehicle from behind, only those light segments directed at the followed vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" so as not to dazzle its driver.

Oncoming vehicle



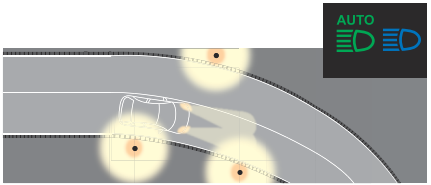
When an oncoming vehicle approaches, only those lamp segments directed at this vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" during the duration of the approach.
The tunnel's shape and position evolve in line with traffic conditions.

Entering an illuminated area



When entering an illuminated area (e.g. city), the segments of the headlights are progressively switched off from the outside in to switch to the low beam headlight mode.

Exiting an illuminated area



The segments of the headlights are progressively switched on to switch to the high beam headlight mode, with or without "tunnel" depending on the driving conditions.

Special Cases

Remains lit on the cluster.

Highway restriction

The system cannot detect the presence of oncoming vehicles on a roadway separated by a low wall or safety rail.
Therefore, the system reduces the light beam on the side of the central separation in order not to dazzle the driver of an oncoming vehicle.
In a bend situation, the restriction angle is adjusted according to the curve radius.

Anti-glare for traffic signs

Some traffic signs may be more dazzling to the driver due to the light reflection of LED headlamps.
The system can modulate the light intensity sent to traffic signs and thus reduce the light reflection to avoid driver glare.

High beam boost

The high beam amplification provides an additional illumination in the centre of the high beam to improve the light distribution when driving at higher speeds.

Pause

Pause If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ▶ Switch the dipped/main beam headlamps manually to pause the function.
- ▶ The lighting system changes to "Automatic illumination of lamps" mode.
  To reactivate the function, manually switch the dipped/main beam headlamps again.

Malfunction

In the first case, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
Stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

In the second case, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message if a malfunction occurs with the adaptive headlamp lighting or the camera.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Adaptive Frontlight System

Available only on versions equipped with Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps.
This function has several lighting modes, specific to each driving situation.
The intensity and direction of the main headlamps and the modules vary so as to increase or reduce the range of the lighting.The modules tilt so as to expand and direct the light beam to increase or decrease the lighting up of the sides of the road.The function shifts the light beam to the sides of the headlamp to ensure better illumination in curves.

Warning
This function is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must continually adapt the driving of the vehicle to the visibility and traffic conditions.

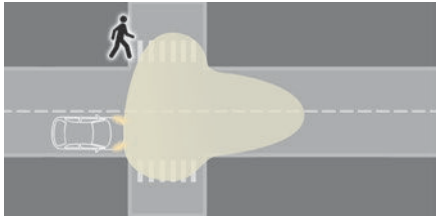
Activation/Deactivation

- Place the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **“AUTO”** position.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

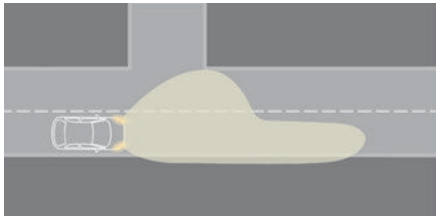
Operation

"Town" mode



The width of the beam is increased to better distinguish hazards on the side of the road (pedestrians, intersections).
By default, the function starts in "Country" mode.
After a few seconds, the function switches to "Town" mode as long as the speed is below 19 mph (30 km/h).
This mode is deactivated after a few seconds above 31 mph (50 km/h).

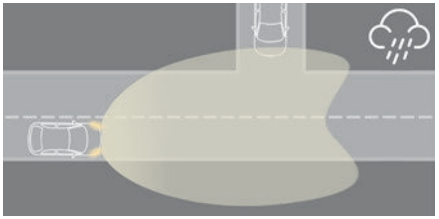
"Country" mode



This lighting provides a higher light beam, an increased intensity of the headlamps and a decreased intensity of the modules.

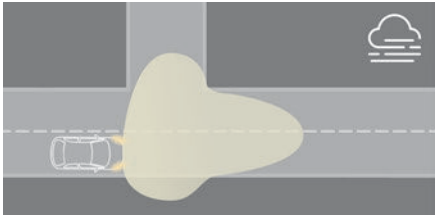
This mode is active as long as the rear foglamps are switched off and/or the front wipers are activated for less than 2 minutes.
Between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 43 mph (70 km/h), with the rear foglamps off and if the front wipers activated for more than 2 minutes continuously, the function switches to "Bad weather" mode.

"Bad weather" mode



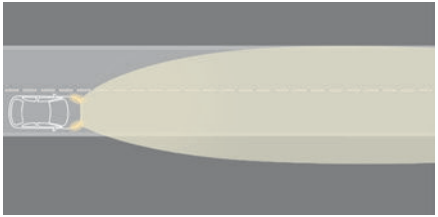
The beam is widened. The power of the modules is increased to enable the driver to see the road markings more easily, whilst the intensity of the main headlamps is reduced so as to improve the driver's vision (taking reflections caused by a wet road into account).
Between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 43 mph (70 km/h), with the rear foglamps off, front wipers activated for many minutes continuously, the function switches to "Country" mode.

"Foggy" mode



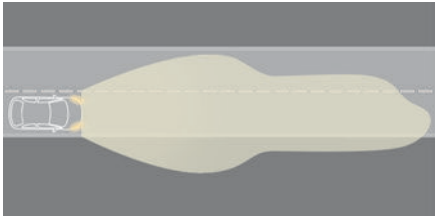
This mode is activated if the vehicle is moving at a speed between 0 and 43 mph (70 km/h) and the rear foglamps are on.Beyond 43 mph (70 km/h), the function switches to "Motorway" mode even if the rear foglamps are activated.

"Motorway" mode



At any time, this lighting mode can be triggered by the Automatic headlamp dipping function independent of the Adaptive Frontlight System function.
This mode automatically adapts to the speed and angle of the steering wheel.
Beyond 55 mph (90 km/h), the power and range of the lighting is maximised to best illuminate the length and width of the roadway.

"Boost motorway" mode



At any time, this lighting mode can be triggered by the Automatic headlamp dipping function independent of the Adaptive Frontlight System function.
This mode automatically adapts to the speed and angle of the steering wheel.
Beyond 70 mph (110 km/h), the power and range of the lighting is maximised to best illuminate the length and width of the roadway.

Static bending lighting

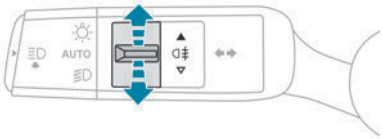
In a bend situation, the light beam provides an additional illumination of the road to the right or left when the vehicle speed is 43 mph (70 km/h) or less.
The system is triggered by curve radius thresholds and vehicle speed.
The phases of increasing and decreasing light intensity are carried out gradually.

Digital bending lighting

In a bend situation, the light beam moves around the curve to match the main direction of the driver's eyes, regardless of the vehicle speed and the bend radius.
The lateral intensities of the low beam are shifted in the appropriate direction of the curve.
The system activates the filled pixel elements to increase/extend the light beam area.

Rear Foglights

They only work if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.



► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn them on/off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (**"AUTO"** position) the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps remain on.
When the rear foglamps are activated, the "fog" mode of the Adaptive Frontlight System function can be activated at the front.
For more information on the **Adaptive Frontlight System**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Tip
Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off. When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guideme- home lighting is activated.

Tip
Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition. To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring, to the **"AUTO"** position, then to the desired position. They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

Tip
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Warning
Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

Tip
Travelling abroad

Vehicles equipped with Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps:
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the Adaptive Frontlight System function should be deactivated on the touch screen to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.

Daytime Running Lights

These LED lamps at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts.
They perform the following functions:
– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position **"AUTO"** with adequate ambient light).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position **"AUTO"** with low ambient light or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

Tip
In daytime running lamps mode, the light-emitting diodes are brighter.

Automatic illumination of lamps

With the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/ sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

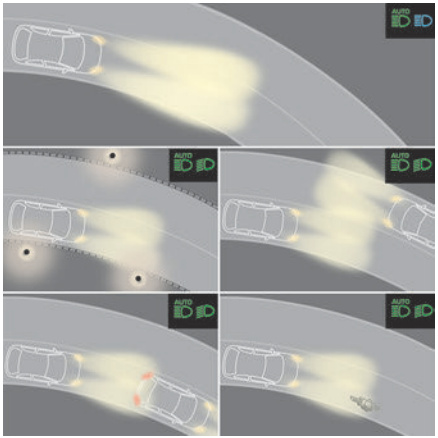
Tip
In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Tip
The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Automatic Headlights Dipping

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



Warning
This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

Tip
The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 28 mph (45 km/h).
When the speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h), the system is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Tip
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on.
When the foglamps are switched off, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function. If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs with the system or the camera, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

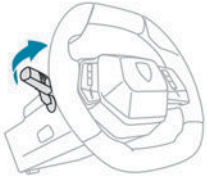
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

You can activate/deactivate and adjust the duration of the guide-me-home lighting in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Manual



- With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/ deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:

- On the outside, sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps.
- Inside, courtesy lamps and footwell lighting.

Door mirror spotlamps

These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.
The spotlamps come on automatically:

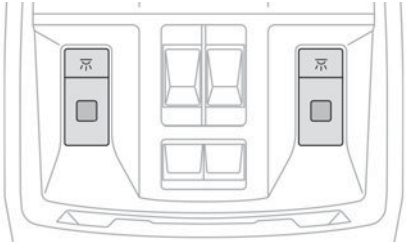
- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when a door is opened.
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions.
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Interior Lights

Courtesy Lights

Non touch-sensitive version

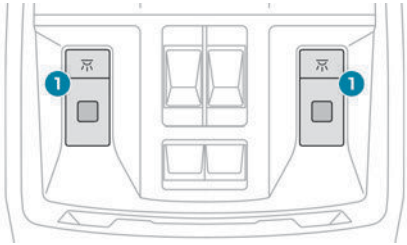


Reading Lights

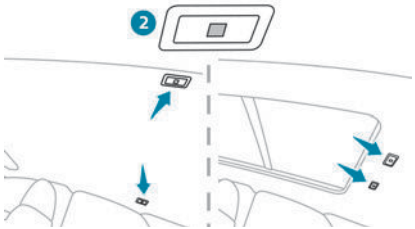
► With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Warning
Do not place anything against the courtesy lamps.

Touch version with LED



1. Front touch-sensitive reading lamps



2. Rear touch-sensitive reading lamps

Touch-sensitive reading lamps

It comes on:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the ignition is switched off.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Interior Ambient Lights

The interior ambient lighting casts soft, coloured lighting in the passenger compartment, when low lighting conditions are detected.
By default, the colour of the interior ambient lighting is linked to that of the screens, depending on the driving mode selected.

Activation/deactivation and adjustment of the brightness are set via the **Settings > Brightness** touch screen application.

The colour is selected via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.

Boot Lights

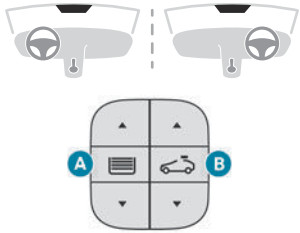
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

- To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof blind control

B. Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated by these buttons when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition.

Warning
Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Warning
Do not operate the sunroof if transverse roof bars are fitted - risk of serious damage! Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

Warning
If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it.

Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

Warning
Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Warning
Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

Warning
Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Opening/Closing the sunroof

- ► To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- ► To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front.

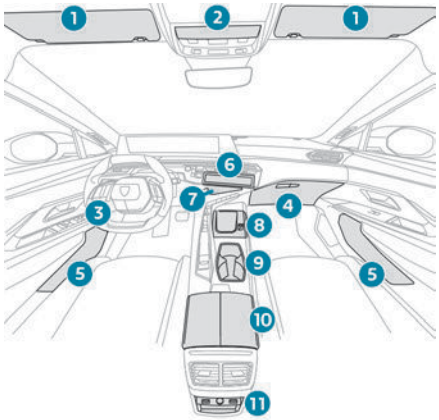
Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.

- ► Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
- ► With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.
- ► Press and hold the front part of button **B**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.
- ► Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **B**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

Tip
If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

Interior Storage-Interior Features



1. Sun visor
2. Glasses holder
3. Coin holder (depending on version)
4. Illuminated glove box
5. Door pockets
6. Storage compartment or i-Toggles
7. Wireless smartphone charger (depending on version)
8. Storage compartment
   Front USB sockets/12 V socket
9. Cup holders
10. Front armrest with storage

11. Rear USB sockets/12 V socket (depending on version)
    Storage compartment or Smartphone storage

Sun visor

► With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; depending on the version, the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove Compartment

► To open the glove box, lift the handle.

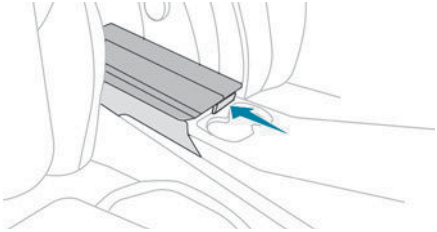
With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

Warning
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Armrest Compartment

It includes a storage space and is illuminated when the cover is opened (depending on version).

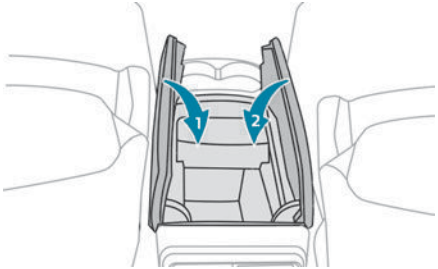
Opening



► Press the lever beneath the cover.

The cover opens in two parts.

Closing



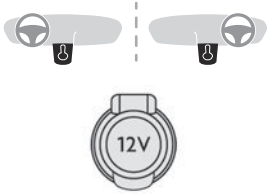
► Fold back the two parts of the cover.

FOCAL® Hi-Fi system

The vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity audio system from the French brand FOCAL®.
10 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of special musical experience inside the vehicle:
– 12 channel full active amplification - 690 Watts Class D booster technology: significant audio power available at all times despite low power consumption.
– Polyglass central speaker: sound immersion and spatialisation.
– Polyglass woofers/mid-range speakers with TMD suspension: balance, dynamics and precision of sound.
– Aluminium TNF inverted dome tweeter: optimal sound dispersion, detailed treble.
– Subwoofer with high excursion Power FlowerTM triple coil: deep and controlled reproduction of low frequencies.

Two customisable listening modes are available:
– "All passengers": an optimised service for each occupant of the vehicle, both front and rear.
– "Optimised for the front": an immersive and augmented experience, shared between the driver and the front passenger.

12V Power Outlets



► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

Warning
Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

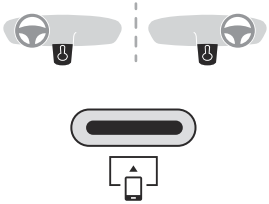
Warning
The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB Ports

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

Power supply and recharging.

Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



USB sockets allow the connection of a portable device.

The USB socket located at the front of the centre console also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.

For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

Tip
When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Wireless Phone Charger

This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

Tip
The system may not function properly if the smartphone is fitted with a protective shell.

Warning
The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

Warning
Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!

Warning
When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Checking operation

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator light	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:

► remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.

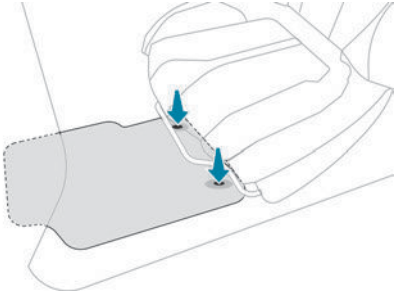
or

► remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Floor Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.

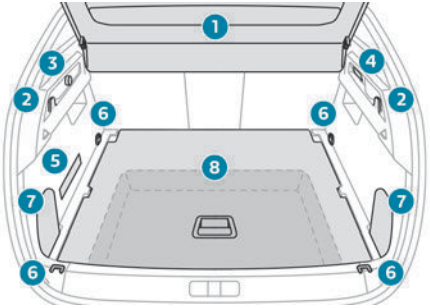
► To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.

► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

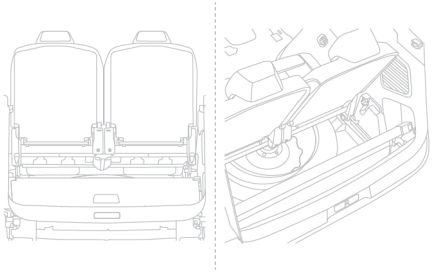
Warning
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats that are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

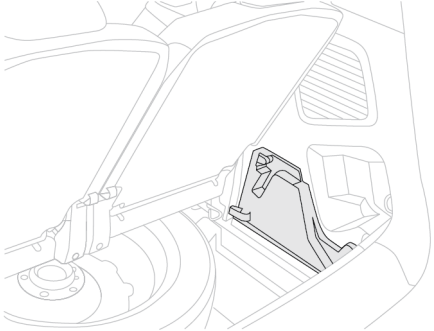
Load Compartment

Boot fittings



1. Load space cover shelf
2. Bag hooks
3. 12 V (120 W) socket
4. Boot lamp
5. Retaining strap
6. Stowing rings
7. Storage compartments
8. 2-position boot floor or hinged boot carpet (PHEV or BEV)
   Storage well/Tool box under the floor
   Hi-Fi amplifier (depending on version)





Slots for stocking 1 position boot-floor.

Tip
The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets or suitable straps.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

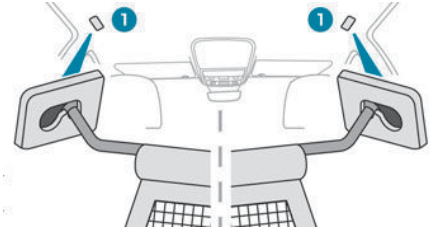
Load space cover

Warning
When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

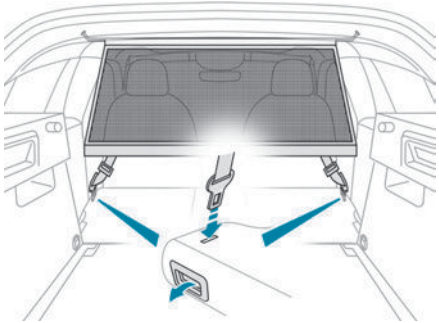
High load retaining net

This removable net allows the entire load volume behind the front seats to be used up to the roof when the rear seats are folded. It offers protection to the occupants when very sharp braking occurs.

▶ Fold down the rear seats.



▶ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into fixing points **1** of the roof.



▶ Attach the net's straps to the lower anchoring points, located on the fixings of the rear bench seat backrest.

▶ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

12 V accessory socket

▶ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.

▶ Switch on the ignition.

Warning
The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Boot lamp

It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

2-position boot floor

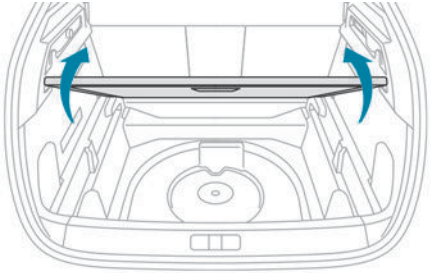
(Depending on version)
This 2-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:
– High position **(100 kg max.)**: to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
– Low position **(150 kg max.)**: maximum boot volume.

Tip
On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:

▶ Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.

▶ Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.



To keep it in the inclined position:

▶ From the high position, lift the floor towards the load space cover.

▶ Engage it in the inclined position in the lateral stops to secure it in this position.

Storage well

▶ Lift the rigid boot floor as far as possible or lift the hinged boot carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:
– A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
– A spare wheel with the tool kit.
– The traction battery charging cables (PHEV or BEV).

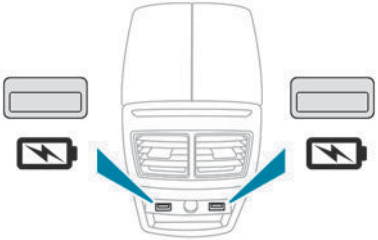
Rear fittings

12 V accessory socket

▶ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.

Warning
The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB sockets



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge a portable device.

Rear armrest

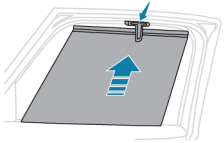
(Depending on version)

The armrest incorporates two cup holders.
The cup holders have a removable reducer to be used depending on the diameter of the cans and cups.

Third row reading lamps

Reading lamps are also available above third row seats.
For more information on **Courtesy lamps**, refer to the corresponding section.

Second row window blinds

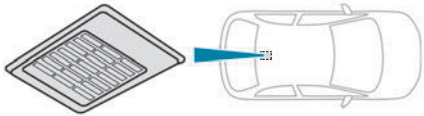


Fitted to the second row windows,they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.

- ▶ Pull the central tab to unroll the blind.
- ▶ Position the blind's clip on the hook.

Tip
Always guide the blind slowly,using the tab,while raising or lowering it.

Shark fin antenna



A ventilation grille is present at the rear of the roof for cooling the shark fin antenna.
Any ventilation noise produced, with the ignition on or the engine running, is completely normal.

Tailgate

Opening the tailgate

- ▶ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ▶ Raise the tailgate.

Tip
When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

Warning
Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the tailgate.
The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- ▶ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- ▶ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

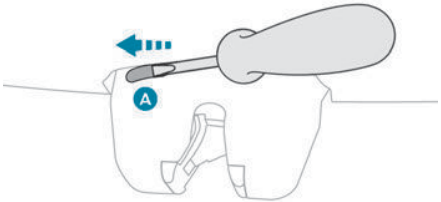
Warning
In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- ▶ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



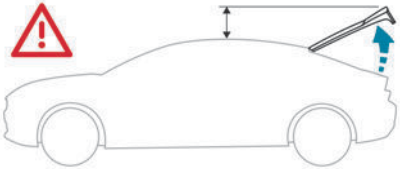
- ▶ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- ▶ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

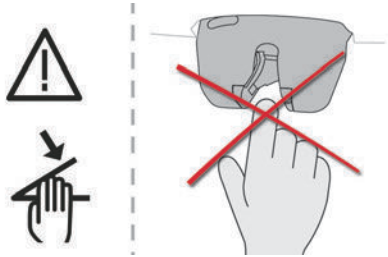
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Automatic Operation

(Depending on version)
The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



Warning
Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the liftgate.



Warning
Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorised liftgate - risk of serious injury!

Warning
To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised liftgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle.
- monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier/Towing device

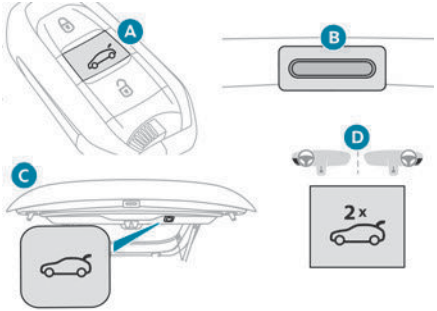
The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on the towing device with connection of the cable to the trailer socket, the remote controls for the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

However, it is still possible to use the two controls located on the motorised tailgate.

Warning
If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by the Manufacturer, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the liftgate.

Motorised operation

The motorised operation of the tailgate is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

A. Using the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key

B. Using the exterior tailgate control

C. Using the interior tailgate control

D. Using the control on the dashboard

Tip
If motorised operation is not activated, the request to open with this function release the liftgate (partially-open position).

Opening

▶ A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

▶ A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B** (with the electronic key on your person, if the vehicle or the tailgate is locked).

or

▶ Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

Tip
The liftgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the liftgate (partially-open position).
When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the liftgate with one of the controls **A** or **B** unlocks the vehicle, or only the liftgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the liftgate.

Closing

▶ A long press on the central button A of the electronic key.

or

▶ A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B.**

or

► A short press on the interior tailgate control **C.**

or

► Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

Tip
It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.
If the tailgate is left open for an extended period of time, the tailgate may need to be closed manually to reset power tailgate functionality.

Hands-free function (Hands- Free Tailgate Access)

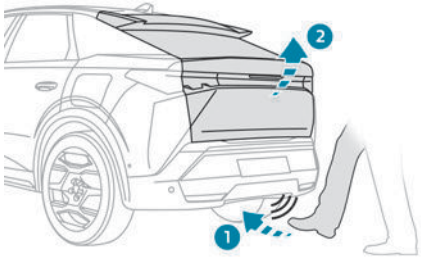
With the electronic key on your person, this function allows the motorised tailgate to be opened, closed or stopped via a "kicking" movement under the rear bumper.

The "Handsfree Trunk Opening" function is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Warning
Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - risk of burns!

Tip
Rechargeable hybrid or electric vehicles

The function is not available when the vehicle is connected (depending on version).



► Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "kicking" movement in the **"OK"** detection zone.

The "kicking" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately.
Acknowledgement of the "kicking" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.

Warning
"Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement.
Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

If the motorised tailgate has not started to open or close, check that:
– the function is activated.
– the electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.
– the "kicking" movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
– the foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

Tip
When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the liftgate with this function unlocks the vehicle, or only the liftgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the liftgate.
Closing the liftgate with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function enables you to lock the vehicle.

Recommendations on the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).
The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.
The function may not work correctly with a 2 prosthetic leg.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:
– hitching up or removing a trailer.
– operating a towing device.
– fitting or removing a bicycle carrier.
– loading or unloading bicycles on/from a bicycle carrier.
– depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle.
– an animal approaches the rear bumper.
– washing the vehicle.
– maintenance is performed on the vehicle.
– accessing the spare wheel.
To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

Warning

Towing device

If the trailer connector of the coupling device is connected, it shall not be possible to open or close it with hands-free (arm-loaded) access.

- In this case use the functions **B**, **C** described above

Memorising an opening position

To limit the opening angle of the motorised tailgate:

▶ move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.

▶ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

A new memorisation operation cancels the previous one.

Tip

Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the liftgate.

Manual Operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.
The tailgate must be stationary.

With resumption of the motorised function

The motorised tailgate function can be activated manually.

▶ With the boot open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the closing direction to activate motorised closing.

▶ With the boot partly open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the opening direction to activate motorised opening.

Without resumption of the motorised function

▶ Move the tailgate as slowly and smoothly as possible.

Assistance from the gas struts is no longer available when opening and closing the motorised tailgate manually. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore quite normal.

Tip

In case of the motor overheating

Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised liftgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.

Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the liftgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Manual closing of the motorised tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure or deinitialisation/loss of the tailgate motor.**
If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed.**
In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

▶ Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the centre of the tailgate.

Warning

Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!

Tip

In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the liftgate.

Tip

When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

Precautions in use

Tip

In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.

Tip

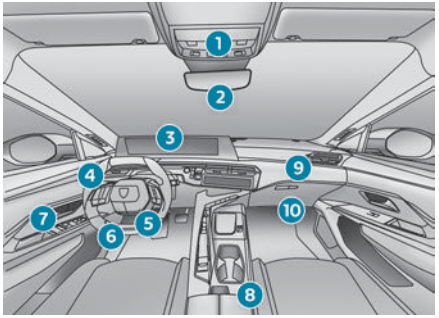
When washing

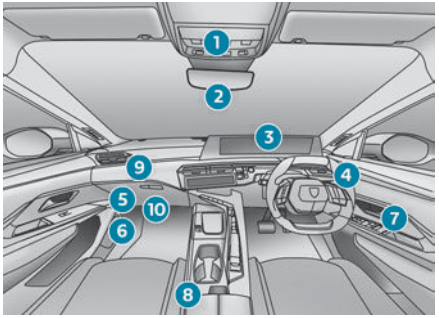
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

Instrument panel overview

Instrument Panel

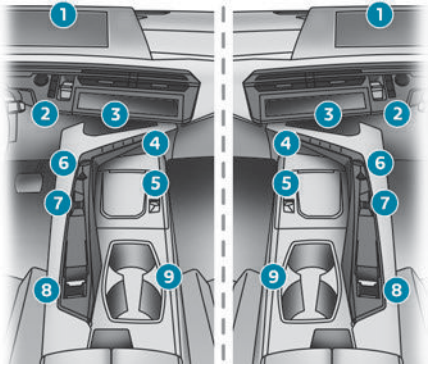
These illustrations and descriptions are provided for information. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.





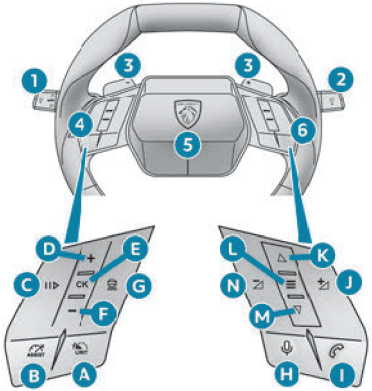
1. Glasses holder
   Sunroof Emergency call (SOS)/ Assistance call
   Courtesy lamp/Front reading lamps
   Warning lamp display for front passenger airbag
2. Interior mirror
3. Digital instrument panel/Touch screen
4. Side control bar/Coin holder
5. Fusebox
6. Bonnet release
7. Central locking
   Door mirrors
   Electric windows
8. Front armrest
9. Front passenger airbag
10. Glove box
    Front passenger airbag deactivation switch

Centre console



1. Touch screen
   HOME button
   Shortcuts for driving aids
2. Starting/Switching off the engine with START/ STOP button Automatic gearbox or Drive selector
3. Storage compartment or i-Toggles
   Wireless smartphone charger
4. Centre control bars
5. Storage compartment
   USB sockets/12 V socket
6. Driving mode selector
   Hazard warning lamps
7. On/Off and Volume adjustment
8. Electric parking brake
9. Cup holders

Steering-mounted controls



1. Exterior lighting controls/Direction indicators/ Instrument panel display page/ Service indicator
2. Wiper controls/Screenwash/Trip computer
3. Automatic gearbox control paddles Control paddles for regenerative braking (Electric)
4. Speed limiter/Cruise control/Adaptive cruise control/Drive Assist Plus or Drive Assist Plus 2.0 controls

A. Select/deselect the speed limiter

B. Select/Deselect the Cruise control Select/Deselect the Adaptive cruise control/ Drive Assist Plus

C. Start/Pause the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function)

D. Increase the speed setting

E. Activation of the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

F. Decrease the speed setting

G. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front (Adaptive cruise control)

5. Horn/driver front airbag
6. Audio system setting controls

H. Short press: system voice commands Long press: smartphone voice commands

I. Pick up/hang up Access to the **Phone** application's call log

J. Increase the volume

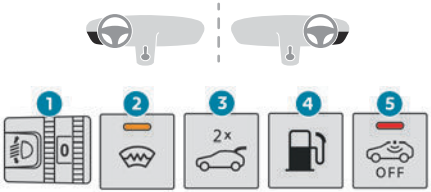
K. Up: next radio/media/smartphone selection

L. Press: validation of a selection

M. Down: previous radio/media/smartphone selection

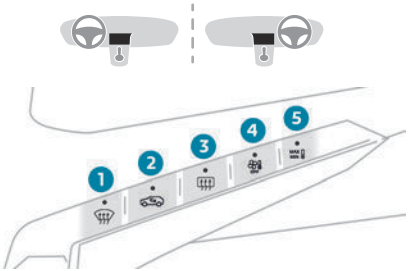
N. Decrease the volume

Side control bar



1. LED technology headlamps beam height adjustment
2. Heated windscreen
3. Motorised tailgate
4. Opening the fuel filler flap (PHEV)
5. Alarm

Central control bars



1. Windscreen and front windows demisting
2. Recirculation of interior air
3. Rear screen de-icing
4. Switching automatic air conditioning off

5. Quick launch function

Information displayed on the instrument panel

The information displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. warning lamps, indicators) may have a fixed or variable location depending on the page or the driving aid activated.
For the functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

> **Tip**
> **Display language and units.** These depend on the touch screen settings. When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

Choice of the displayed page

By default, pages are memorised in the instrument panel.

► Press the button located at the end of the lighting control stalk to scroll through the different pages.

The new page is applied immediately.

> **Tip**
> When a message is displayed in a temporary window, pressing this thumbwheel will cause this window to disappear immediately.

Settings for displayed pages

The available settings operations are: addition, deletion and layout of pages and widgets.
Each page may contain 1 or 2 widgets:

- With 1 widget, large display in central position.
- With 2 widgets, reduced display in side position.

It is possible to personalise only one page with 2 widgets.
The setting also matches the interior ambient lighting (depending on availability).

The settings are changed via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.

For more information on **Personalisation - Instrument Panel**, refer to the corresponding section for the Audio equipment and telematics systems.

Instrument Cluster

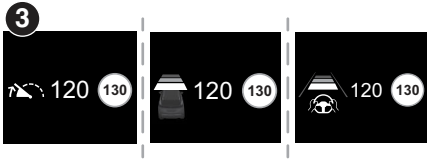
Digital instrument panels are of the head-up or 3D head-up type.
They can be personalised using a system of pages and widgets.
Depending on the page displayed, certain information is not displayed or is presented differently.

ICE

Hybrid 48 V

PHEV

BEV



1. Coolant temperature indicator (°C) (ICE or PHEV)
   Odometer (Hybrid 48 V)
   Battery charge level and remaining range (miles or km) indicator (PHEV or ICE)
2. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
   Driving mode selected (other than **Normal** mode)
   Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV) Selector position and gear engaged on automatic gearbox (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV)
   Drive selector position (BEV)
3. Display of speed limit signs Driving aids area (if the function is activated)
4. Rev counter (rpm) (ICE)
   Power indicator (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV)
   READY indicator lamp (ICE or Hybrid 48 V)
5. Fuel gauge and remaining range (miles or km) (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or BEV)
   Regenerative braking level indicator (BEV)
6. Total distance recorder (miles or km) ((ICE, Hybrid 48 V or BEV) e-SAVE (miles or km) (PHEV)

The information listed in the personalisation page is as follows:

- Energy flows (Hybrid 48 V, PHEV or BEV).
- Current media.
- Driving aids (e.g. Extended Traffic Sign Recognition).
- Navigation (depending on equipmRetractable handles⊕dent).
- Engine temperatures (ICE or Hybrid 48 V).
- Rev counter (ICE).

Tip

Hybrid 48 V or PHEV

In all-BEV driving mode, the speed is displayed in blue.

Gear indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.

Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

Tip
The system is only active in mode **M** of the automatic gearbox.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

Tip
The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear.
– engaging reverse gear.

Drive mode indicator

Odometer

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Tip
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

Tip

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer.
For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

High-voltage battery charge status

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.
There are 3 zones:

For Hybrid 48 V versions

POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**

The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**

The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.

CHARGE **Energy recoveryfor recharging the traction battery.**
The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

Tip
When the ignition is switched on and before the engine is started, the power indicator only displays **"OFF"**.

For PHEV versions

POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**

The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**

The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.
A symbol indicates the threshold at which the petrol engine will restart. The driver can therefore moderate their acceleration to remain in electric driving mode.

CHARGE **Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.**

The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

For BEV versions

CHARGE Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.

ECO Moderate energy consumption and optimised driving range.

POWER Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.

NEUTRAL

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's BEV drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the cursor returns to its "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Tip
With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves to the "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (e.g. range, average consumption, average speed, distance travelled)

Geofencing (PHEV)

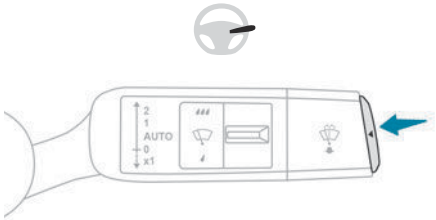
While driving, the vehicle constantly monitors traffic in low-emission zones or restricted traffic zones.
When entering one of these zones, the vehicle automatically switches to BEV driving mode if the traction battery's charge level is sufficient.

Trip Planner (BEV)

By programming a guidance in the on-board navigation system, the system researches the charging stations required for the journey to be made.
Depending on the progress of the journey and the state of charge of the traction battery, the system continuously updates the stops to be made for recharging.

Data displayed on the instrument panel

Displaying the different tabs



- Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

– Current information:

- Current consumption (Petrol or Hybrid).
- Time counter for Stop & Start (Petrol).
- Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (Hybrid 48V or PHEV).
- Total distance recorder (PHEV or BEV).

– Trips **"1"** then **"2":**

- Average speed.
- Average consumption.
- Distance travelled.

End of trip page

(Depending on version)
When the ignition is switched off, the instrument panel automatically displays an additional page of the trip computer that recapitulates information about the last trip.
The end of trip page contains the following information:

- Range.
- Trip time.
- Distance travelled.
- Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (Hybrid 48 V or PHEV).
- Average consumption.

Trip reset

When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent and are used in the same way.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km) (Traction battery charge level percentage) (BEV)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

Actual traction battery charge level and remaining range (BEV).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.

For ICE versions

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

For BEV versions

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level.
For more information on the **Indicators**, and in particular the **Charge level indicator**, refer to the corresponding section.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l) (miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed at speeds above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l) (miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Warning, lights, indicators and messages

Overview

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivationindicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning light

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

Overview

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

1.	only for information
2.	information and warning
3.	seek the assistance of a workshop
4.	stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop
5.	have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

List of warning and indicator lights

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Traction battery overheating (Hybrid 48V, PHEV or BEV)

Fixed, combined with the STOP warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.
Carry out (1).

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Carry out (2).

Traction battery malfunction (Hybrid 48V, PHEV or BEV)

Fixed, combined with the STOP warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The traction battery has a fault.
Carry out (2).

Maximum coolant temperature

Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV)

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (Hybrid 48 V , PHEV or BEV)

Fixed.
A fault has been detected in the system (electric motor or traction battery).

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (PHEV or BEV)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on.

The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12 V battery charge

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).

Carry out (1).
If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:

- With the automatic gearbox or drive selector, fit the chock against one of the wheels.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Electric parking brake

Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P.**
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Door(s) open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.

An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) for a door or the boot, 4 mph (6 km/h) for the bonnet.
A door, the boot or the bonnet is not properly closed.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.
The indicator lamp for the corresponding seat also goes on or flashes in the vehicle's symbol.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tire underinflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed ".**

The audible warning system is in failure.

The following driving aids may be disturbed or unavailable:
– Road signs recognition.
– Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
– Lane keeping assist.
– Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault".**

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Braking

Fixed, a minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.
Carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault"**.

The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.
Carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault".**
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:

- ▶ Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- ▶ Park on a level surface.
- ▶ With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P,** then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)

Fixed, the "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.

If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control.
- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control and the brake pedal.

Foot on the brake

Fixed, insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode **P** on an automatic gearbox or a drive selector.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed, the anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Power steering

Fixed, a minor fault in the power steering has been detected.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostic system (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV)

Flashing, the engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (2).

Fixed, the emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) without delay.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Fixed, the system is deactivated.

The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted,and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Flashing, DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed, the DSC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault".**

Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Hill start assist

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Anti roll-back system fault".**
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Post Collision Safety Brake

Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Under-inflation

Fixed, the pressure in one or more tires is too low.

Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.

The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Parking sensors

Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

Airbags

Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp and accompanied by the display of a message.

One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.

Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed, the front passenger airbag is activated.

The control is set to the **"ON"** position.

In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)

Fixed, the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is set to the **“OFF”** position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Low fuel level (ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, there remains **approximately 6 litres of fuel** in the tank (reserve).
Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.**Never drive until completely empty,** as

this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (Electric)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (Electric)

Fixed, the state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning lamp remains lit, carry out (2).

Pedestrian horn (Hybrid 48 V, PHEV or BEV)

Fixed, horn fault detected.

Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Flashing.

The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the touch screen.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Fixed.

The system has a fault.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Fixed.

The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Road signs recognition

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Lane keeping assist

Flashing, you are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, the system has been automatically deactivated or placed on stand-by.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Driver Attention Warning by Camera (Distraction detection)

Fixed.
The system is deactivated.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual ".**

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Stop & Start (Petrol)

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.

Fixed, the Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:
– below 0°C.
– above +35°C.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Flashing then fixed, accompanied by a message.

The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

e-Auto mode (Hybrid)

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The e-Auto mode has been deactivated manually.

The petrol engine will not switch off at the next release of the accelerator pedal or at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the mode via the touch screen.

Rear foglamps

Fixed, the lamps are on.

Peugeot Pixel LED

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A malfunction of the Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps or of the camera has been detected.
Carry out (2).

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A function or camera malfunction is detected.
Carry out (2).

Green warning/indicator lamps

Stop & Start (Petrol)

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

For more information, refer to the Driving section.

Vehicle ready to drive (PHEV or BEV)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive.
For electric vehicles, the thermal comfort systems are also available.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.
The lamp will go out when you switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.

Seat unoccupied/Seat belt not fastened

Fixed.
(vehicle in green;dots in grey)

With the ignition on, one of the front or rear passenger seats is considered to be unoccupied.

Seat occupied/Seat belt fastened

Fixed.

With the ignition on, the driver or a passenger has fastened their seat belt.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Fixed.
(grey)

The function has been activated, but is currently paused because the speed is too high.
Reduce the vehicle speed to below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Fixed.

The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).

Flashing.
The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle.

The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

AUTO HOLD (Adaptive cruise control)

Fixed, accompanied by a message display.

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised.
With an automatic gearbox (EAT6), the driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

With an automatic gearbox (e-DCS6/7) or drive selector:
– Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.
– Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate to move off.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Direction indicators

Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps

Fixed.
With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lamps are on.

With inadequate ambient light, the sidelamps are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Peugeot Pixel LED

Steady
The function is active
All operating conditions are met

Depending on traffic conditions, the controller controls
the switching on of the dipped headlights.

The switching on of the main beam headlights, partially or completely.

Steady

The function is active but not available
Not all operating conditions are met.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Steady
The function is active
All operating conditions are met

Depending on traffic conditions, the controller controls the switching on of the dipped headlights.

The switching on of the main beam headlights.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed, the lamps are on.

e-SAVE function (PHEV)

Fixed, accompanied by the reserved electric range.
The function is activated.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and/or time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:
– The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
– An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Tip
The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

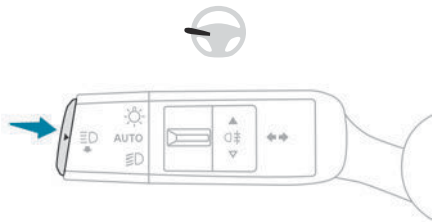
Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

- Switch the ignition off.



- ▶ Press and hold the button located on the end of the lighting control stalk.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition without starting the engine; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
- ▶ When the display indicates **= 0,** a confirmation message appears; release the lighting control stalk button and the spanner symbol disappears.

Tip
If you disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information

Servicing information is accessible using the **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.

Then select **Safety > Diagnostics.**

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.

Tip
The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Low oil level

This is indicated by the message **"Oil level incorrect"** on the instrument panel, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the message **"Oil level measurement invalid"** on the instrument panel. Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Coolant temperature indicator

With the engine running:
– In zone **A,** the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high. The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

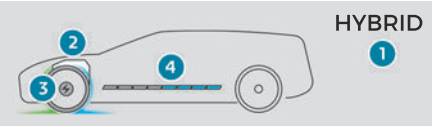
Warning
After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

Tip
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Power indicator (Hybrid 48 V, PHEV or BEV)

For PHEV

The page shows the operation of the rechargeable hybrid system in real time.

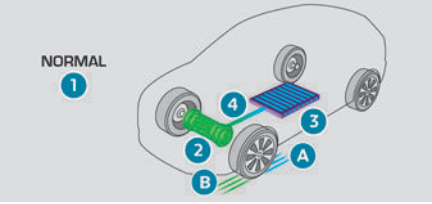


1. Active driving mode
2. Petrol engine
3. Electric motor
4. Estimated traction battery charge level

The energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:
– **Blue:** 100% electrical energy.
– **White:** energy from the petrol engine.
– **Green:** energy recovery.

For BEV

The page shows the operation of the electric drive train in real time.



1. Active driving mode
2. Electric motor
3. Estimated traction battery charge level
4. Energy flows

The energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:

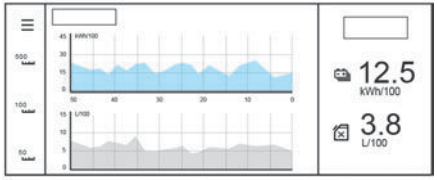
A. **Blue:** energy consumption

B. **Green:** energy recovery

History

For PHEV

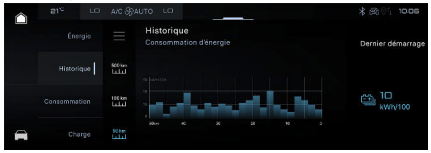
This page shows the history of electrical energy and fuel consumption.



- Upper graph (blue): average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values.
- Lower graph (grey): average fuel consumption for the current trip (l/100 km) and historical values.

For BEV

This page shows the history of electrical energy consumption.

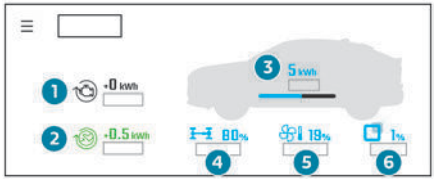


- Upper graph: energy consumed directly from the traction battery.

The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.
It is possible to view data for the last 300, 60 or 30 miles (500, 100 or 50 kilometres) by clicking on the corresponding value on the left of the graph.

Usage

This page shows the different types of consumption of the vehicle's equipment.



1. Energy consumed (kWh) by the petrol engine (PHEV).
2. Energy recovered (kWh) during deceleration and braking phases.
3. Energy consumed (kWh) by the traction battery.
4. Electricity used (%) by the electric motor.
5. Electricity used (%) by thermal comfort equipment.
6. Electricity used (%) by other electrical accessories.

Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery,** refer to the corresponding section.

e-SAVE (PHEV)

The **e-SAVE** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery to be used later during a journey (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for electric vehicles).

▶ Activate the function by pressing **Set e-SAVE**, then select the electric range to be reserved **(HOLD, 12 mi (20 km),** or the full range **Maximum).**

Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

▶ To use the energy reserve, choose the **Electric** driving mode in the mode selector.

Warning
If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Charge level indicator (PHEV or BEV)

For PHEV versions

The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.

Warning
The range displayed depends on the use of the vehicle (type of driving and speed), the outside temperature and the activated comfort equipment.

For BEV versions

The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

Tip
With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lamps

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

Fixed and indicator in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal.

▶ View the remaining range on the instrument panel.

▶ Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

Fixed, together with the reserve warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal.

▶ You must put the vehicle on charge.

Warning
The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.
The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the thermal comfort consumption indicator is not at the "**ECO**" level).

Thermal comfort consumption indicator (BEV)

It is available in the display pages of the instrument panel.
The indicator shows the consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.
The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:
– If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** lamp is lit.

– If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).
Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment. The thermal comfort consumption indicator displays **"0 w"** (watts).

Tip
To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.
When the heating is on maximum, the thermal comfort consumption indicator displays "**15000 w**" (watts).
Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

The test is launched in the **Settings> Vehicle** touch screen application.

► Then select **Safety > Diagnostics.**

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:
– Tire pressures.
– Engine oil level (depending on engine).
– Next service due.
– Current alerts.

Tip
This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Tip
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Tip

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer.
For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Lighting dimmer

Used to manually adjust the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the exterior light level.

It is configured in the **Settings > Brightness** touch screen application.

► In the **"Cockpit"** category, press or move the slider to the desired setting.

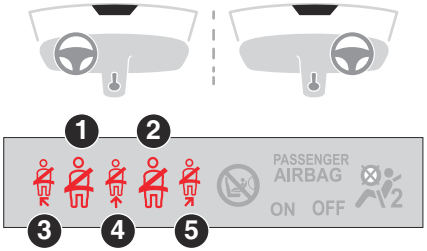
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Post collision safety brake (PCSB).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

and illuminate or flash.



The indicator lights within the symbol indicate the respective seat.

1. Front left seat belt
2. Front right seat belt
3. Rear left seat belt
4. Rear centre seat belt
5. Rear right seat belt

Depending on the condition, the indicator lights may have different colours:
red : seat belt not fastened
green : seat belt fastened
grey : seat not occupied

- When the ignition is switched on and a seat belt is fastened the corresponding indicator light illuminates green. If one of the seat is detected as unoccupied, the corresponding indicator light illuminates grey.
- When the ignition is switched on and one of the front seat belts is not fastened, and " illuminate with the respective indicator light in red (1 or 2).
- When the ignition is switched on and one of the rear seat belts is not fastened, " illuminates with the respective indicator light in red (3, 4 or 5).
- After driving off, and " and the corresponding indicator light flash red in the cluster for a certain time together with a chime if the respective seat is occupied but the seat belt is not fastened. After a certain time of driving, and " illuminate constantly red until the seat belt of the respective seat has been fastened.
- If any passenger has unfastened the seat belt during driving, and " flash red in the cluster for a certain time together with a chime. After a certain time of driving, and " illuminate constantly red until the seat belt of the respective seat has been fastened again.

Climate Controls

Heating and Ventilation

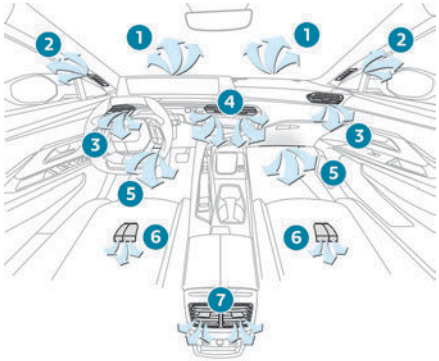
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on version, certain controls are accessible in the **Climate** touch screen application and/via the control panel on the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/de-icing vents
2. Front side window demisting/de-icing vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells
7. Adjustable and closable air vents

Tip
Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Warning
Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

Restriction
If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Tip
Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Tip
Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Tip
Stop & Start/e-Auto mode (where provided)

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running.
Temporarily deactivate the corresponding system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
PHEV vehicles

Intensive use of the air conditioning reduces the vehicle range in BEV mode.

Tip
BEV vehicles

Selecting the ECO driving mode reduces electrical energy consumption, but restricts the performance of the heating and air conditioning systems, although it does not deactivate them.

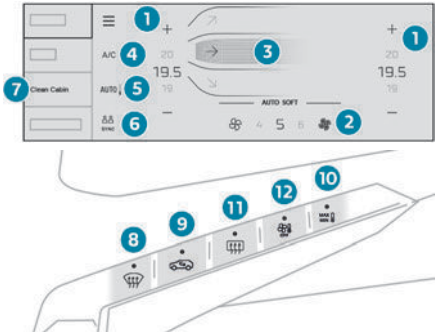
Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, the ventilation system and the air flow **2** and air distribution **3** settings in the passenger compartment are activated, for a period which depends on the battery charge.
This function does not include the air conditioning system.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

This system automatically controls the activation of the air conditioning system, regulating the temperature, air flow and air distribution inside the passenger compartment.
This system works with the engine running, but access to the ventilation and its controls remains possible with the ignition on.

▶ Press the **Climate** application button to display the system controls page.



1. Temperature adjustment
2. Air flow adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Air conditioning on/off
5. Automatic air conditioning on/off and setting (AUTO SOFT/AUTO NORMAL/AUTO FAST)
6. Driver/front passenger temperature synchronisation
7. Clean Cabin function
8. Front demisting/de-icing
9. Interior air recirculation
10. Quick Launch function
11. Rear screen demisting/de-icing
12. Switching the system off

Without i-Toggles

With i-Toggles

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.
The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

► Press one of the buttons 1 (+ or -) or drag vertically to increase or decrease the value.

It is possible to go beyond the minimum and maximum values by selecting respectively **Low or High.**
It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Temperature synchronisation

The driver side temperature setting is applied to the passenger side.

► Press button **6-SYNC** to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons.

Automatic air conditioning

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

► Press button **5-AUTO** to activate/deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.

The intensity of the automatic air conditioning is modulated by choosing one of the following settings:
– **AUTO SOFT**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
– **AUTO NORMAL**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
– **AUTO FAST**: provides dynamic and efficient air distribution.
To change the AUTO mode, press button **5-AUTO** successively.
To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favour settings **AUTO NORMAL** and **AUTO FAST.**

Tip
In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic air conditioning manual settings

It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:
– air flow.
– air distribution.
The indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes out if a setting is changed.

► Press button **5-AUTO** again to reactivate automatic air conditioning.

Adjusting the air flow

► Press one of the buttons 2 (fan) or drag horizontally to increase or decrease air flow. It is also possible to directly press one of the values.

> **Tip**
>
> **Switching off the air conditioning system**
>
> When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.
> "**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **3** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Windscreen and side windows

Central and side air vents

Footwells

A symbol is activated to display the presence of blown air in the direction indicated.
It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Quick Launch function

Using the interior temperature sensor, this function automatically activates:
– If cold temperatures are detected (below around 4°C):
• Heating (**High)**/Heated seats/Heated steering wheel.
• Air distribution towards the footwells and maximum air flow.
– If mild temperatures are detected (between approximately 4°C and 35°C):
• Air conditioning (**AUTO FAST**).
• Automatic air distribution and maximum air flow.
• Temperature setting at 21°C.
– If hot temperatures are detected (above around 35°C):
• Air conditioning (**Low**)/Ventilated seats.
• Air distribution towards the side and central vents and maximum air flow.

► To activate/deactivate the function, press button **10-MIN/MAX°.**

Clean Cabin function

It includes the AQS (Air Quality System) and Clean Air functions.

► To activate/deactivate the function, press button **7.**

AQS function

Using an exterior pollution sensor, this function automatically activates the recirculation of interior air when a certain level of pollutants in the exterior air is detected.
When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.
This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the windscreen wash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

Clean Air function

Using an interior pollution sensor, this function detects fine particles (e.g. cigarette smoke, mould, bacteria).
The management of the recirculation of interior air makes it possible to return to a purified passenger compartment in just a few minutes, thanks to the passage of air through the highperformance passenger compartment filter.
If the air quality appears to be reduced, contact a ok will dodealer or a qualified workshop to change the high-performance passenger compartment filter.

Air conditioning on/off

Air conditioning on/off The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:
– It lowers the temperature in summer.
– It increase the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **4-A/C** to switch the air conditioning on/off.
When the function is switched on, "A/C" changes colour.

> **Tip**
> Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
> To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
> Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Maximum air conditioning

This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and, if necessary, activates interior air recirculation.

► Press this button to activate/de-activate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

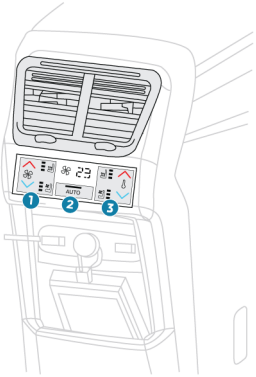
Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

Switching off the air conditioning system

► Press button **12-OFF.**

Its indicator lamp lights up and all the other indicator lamps of the air conditioning system go off.
This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Tri-zone automatic air conditioning



When this function is activated, the rear air vents blower starts up. In this case, the rear passengers can control the air flow from these air vents independently of the air conditioning air flow control for the front air vents.
When the function is deactivated,the maximum air flow distributed by rear air vents is limited by the air conditioning air flow setting for the front air vents.

► Press the "**large fan"** or "**small fan"** button to increase or decrease the air flow.

The corresponding indicator lamps come on.
If all of the indicators lamps are off, a slight air flow can still be felt as a result of the vehicle's movement.

Interior air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

► Press this button to activate/de-activate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

> **Tip**
> This function is activated automatically when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

Front demisting/ defrosting

This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

► Press this button to activate/de-activate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/ extinction of the indicator lamp).

The mode automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow, air intake and distributes ventilation optimally to the windscreen and side windows.
The air flow can be changed manually without deactivating this mode.

> **Tip**
> With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Warning
In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windscreen around the camera.
Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

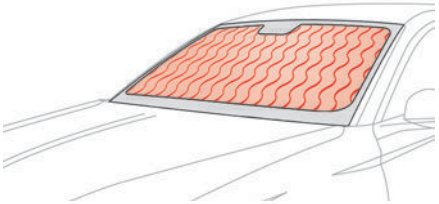
Rear screen demisting/ defrosting

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.
Depending on version, it also demists/de-ices the door mirrors.

▶ Press this button to activate/de-activate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/ switching off).

The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be.The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this function heats the entire windscreen and complements the Automatic Visibility programme to speed up the evacuation of elements that interfere with visibility (e.g. dew, mist, frost, snow), located on either side of the windscreen.
It can be used both before setting off and while driving.

Switching on/off

▶ With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).

The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Temperature pre-conditioning (PHEV or BEV)

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

Programming

▶ In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Precondi-tioning** tab.

▶ Press + to add a programme.

▶ Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.

▶ Press **ON** to activate this programming.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

Tip
You can set multiple programmes.
Each one is saved in the system.
To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MY-PEUGEOT APP** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions,** refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

The door mirrors are folded when the temperature pre-conditioning and the ignition are on.

Tip

Vehicles equipped with an alarm system

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked.**
- When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 20% (PHEV) or 30% (BEV).
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

TEMPERATURE PRE-CONDITIONING (ICE)

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.

Programming

In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Preconditioning** tab.

▶ Press **+** to add a program.

▶ Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.

▶ Press **ON** to activate this programming. The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 20 minutes before the programmed time.

This indicator lamp comes on fixed when a temperature pre-conditioning cycle is programmed. It flashes when temperature preconditioning is in progress.

Tip

You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MY-PEUGEOT APP** application.

Tip

Vehicles equipped with an alarm system

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

Pre-conditioning can only begin if all doors are locked, windows and bonnet closed.
Pre-conditioning starts the engine of the petrol vehicle.

Pre-conditioning is limited to a 20min cycle. A second cycle can only be performed after rolling.

Touch screen and Info Display

10-INCH TOUCH SCREEN

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Time and exterior temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Settings of functions specific to PHEV vehicles.
- Settings of functions specific to BEV vehicles.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions.
- Interactive handbook.
- Video tutorials by QR-code (e.g. screen management, driving aids, voice recognition).
- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).

Warning

For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that

require sustained attention. Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

These recommendations are valid for the touch screen and for the i-Toggles (depending on equipment).
The touch screen and the i-Toggles screen are capacitive touch screens.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

- ▶ Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Main controls

Access to one of the home pages
Return to the first home page

Direct access to the **Climate** menu

Direct access to the **Driving** menu

- ▶ Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access a list of quick settings (e.g.Brightness, Diagnostics).
- ▶ Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, with or without the context menu, scroll the text by swiping with your finger, as with a smartphone.

Show/Hide context menu

Return to the previous page

- ▶ To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).

Access additional information on the function

Access to function parameters

Adding/Removing shortcuts

Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/re-store sound.
volume adjustment.

Applications

Press this button to access the applications wall.
To obtain information about the other applications not listed here, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematic systems.

ADAS
Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the driving aid functions.

Climate
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.
For more information on **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section. Activation/Deactivation of the heated steering wheel.
For more information on the **Heated steering wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Seats
Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the seat comfort functions (heating, ventilation and massages).
For more information on the **Heated and/or ventilated seats** or on the **Multi-point massages**, refer to the corresponding section.

Settings
Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.
Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the exterior lighting, vehicle access and safety functions.

Energy

For PHEV versions

Access to the PHEV system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charging, e- SAVE function).

Energy application (PHEV or BEV)

Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery,** refer to the corresponding section.

e-SAVE (PHEV)

The **e-SAVE** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery to be used later during a journey (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for electric vehicles).

- Activate the function by pressing **Set e-SAVE**, then select the electric range to be reserved **(HOLD, 12 mi (20 km), 18 mi (30 km)** or the full range **Maximum).**

Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

- To use the energy reserve, choose the **Electric** driving mode in the mode selector.

Warning
If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

e-SAVE (PHEV)

The **e-SAVE** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery to be used later during a journey (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for BEV vehicles).

► Activate the function by pressing **Set e-SAVE** , then select the electric range to be reserved (**6 miles (10 km) , 12 miles (20 km)** or the full range **Maximum**).

Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

► To use the energy reserve, choose the **BEV** driving mode in the mode selector.

Warning
If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Introduction about Infotainment system

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

Tip
The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

Warning
For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Tip
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

For more information on Energy economy mode , refer to the "Getting to know your vehicle" section.

Tip
The AM radio selection mode is not available on BEV vehicles.

Tip
The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link: https://www.peugeot.com/fr/oss-source-codes.html

Warning
Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user.
By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions:
https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/ eula-automotive/?388448

Infotainment First Step

The system starts when the ignition is switched on.
Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/re-store sound.
volume adjustment.

Information

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).
- Time and outside temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, extended head-up display (depending on equipment and version), audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Settings for functions specific to PHEV vehicles.
- Settings for functions specific to BEV vehicles.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions.
- Interactive handbook.
- Video tutorials (e.g. screen management, driving aids, voice recognition).

Upper banner

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:
– Outside temperature from the vehicle's sensors (associated with a blue symbol if there is a risk of ice).
– Temperature setting reminder for the air conditioning on the driver's and passenger sides.
– Charge level of the connected smartphone.

– System connection status (Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, mobile telephone network).
– Time.
– Quick access to the Mirror Screen® functions (associated with a connected smartphone).
Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access the notifications centre and display a list of quick settings :Guest, Privacy Settings, Brightness, My Devices, night mode, etc.

Principles

▶ Use this button (HOME) to display the most recent home page used; a second press displays the first home page, then press the virtual buttons displayed on the touch screen.

▶ Scroll through the home pages by sliding your finger along the screen to the right or to the left.

Principle of movement in the system

Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, scroll through the text or the menu (on the left side of the screen) by sliding your finger, as with a smartphone.

Touch buttons

Display/hide the context me Display/hide the context men

Return to the previous page.

▶ To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).

Access to additional information about the function.

Access to a function's settings.

Add/delete shortcuts.

Configuring profiles

▶ Press the **" Settings "** application.

▶ In the list, select the " Profile " tab.

The screen displays a "Guest" profile built into the system and allows you to create and personalise several new profiles with or without an associated mobile device.

The **" Guest "** profile is pre-created and displayed by default, you can customize its settings and reset them to the original values. This profile is built into the system and cannot be deleted.

The "**Driver**" profile is pre-created and displayed by default, you can customize its settings, and also delete this profile.

Tip
The "**Guest**" profile is intended for occasional users. While its settings can be changed and saved, they will automatically return to their original values once the profile becomes inactive.

Each profile created can be associated with a mobile device of your choice; the function of the mobile device must first be activated.

The last profile used will be highlighted.

▶ Select **" Create Profile "**, then follow the procedure.

Creating a new profile allows you to personalise:

- Language, units, Privacy Settings.
- Screen configuration, appearance, SMART TOUCH (depending on equipment).
- Audio settings, favourite radio stations.
- Lighting, interior ambience (refer to the "**Ease of use and comfort**" section).
- Navigation history, favourite points of interest (POIs), navigation settings.
- Some driving aids and the list of favourites.

▶ To delete a profile, select it from the list of profiles then press the bin.

Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode",
or
a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.
For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.

"Sharing Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

Tip
The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

"Sharing Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

Tip
Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

Tip
This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by "Over-The-Air" technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

"Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

Tip
Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

Tip
This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by "Over-The-Air" technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

Tip

Professional purposes

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

▶ To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.

▶ Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

Or

▶ Press the **" Settings "** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

▶ Select **"Privacy Settings".**

▶ Choose the mode.

Internet portal

During the first use, upon acquisition of the vehicle, the user is invited to select the country of residence for the use of the Internet portal.

If the country is not selected, the notification is stored in the notification centre and disappears once the country is selected. Slide a finger on the touch screen from top to bottom to display all the notifications.
The selection of a country is necessary to use the available internet applications.

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Connected Services".**

▶ Choose the country.

The first time you use it, via a connected mobile device, the system links to your profile. The connected mobile device serves as an access key to saved personal information.

▶ First activate the mobile device's Bluetooth® function.

▶ Select the desired application, authentication will be requested if necessary.

This authentication will be saved for future uses via the mobile device connected to the current profile.
An authentication will be requested at each use if the mobile device is not connected to the current profile or if the Guest profile is used.

With the use of the "Guest" profile, an identification will be requested for each use.

Updating the system

Tip

Managing devices remotely and remote updating of software and firmware.

Being an integral part of the service used to provide connected services contract(s), the required management of devices as well as the required updating of the software and firmware associated with the aforementioned connected service will be carried out remotely, in particular using "Over the Air" technology.
To do this, a secure connection via radio network is established between the vehicle and the Manufacturer's device management server each time the ignition is switched on, when a mobile telephone network is available.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the connection configuration must be set to "Connected vehicle" to enable to the connection to the radio network.
Irrespective of a valid subscription to a connected service, the remote management of devices relating to or connected with the security of devices, and the updating of software and firmware, will be carried out when necessary in order to comply with a legal requirement applicable to the Manufacturer (e.g. the applicable law in terms of product liability, the regulations governing e-call) or when necessary to protect the respective vital interests of the vehicle's users and passengers.
The establishment of a secure connection via radio network and the corresponding remote updates are not affected by the privacy settings and are intended to be carried out after being initialised by the user in response to a related notification.

The system can notify the receipt of an update when it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile telephone network.
Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.
The availability of an update is notified on the screen at the end of the journey with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.
The installation time is variable and can take several minutes, or up to a maximum time of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.
Update information is available through the "Settings" application.

▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

▶ In the list, select the "**Updates**" tab.

This button allows you to change the authorisation for automatic downloading of updates via an exterior Wi-Fi network.

Warning
For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention on the part of the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on but without starting the engine.

The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:
– engine running.
– emergency call in progress.
– insufficient battery level.
– when charging for electric vehicles.

If an update has failed or has expired, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
The manufacturer does not charge for the use of this service.
However, the use of Wi-Fi and/or mobile phone networks by your smartphone may incur extra charges if you exceed the data allowance included in your contract.
Any associated costs will be billed to you by your mobile telephone operator.

Menu

Profiles

Personalisation

Widgets

▶ Press and hold the screen from one of the system's home pages.

Or

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.

▶ Press the **"Displays"** field.

A page divided into 2 parts is displayed.

▶ Press the HOME button at any time to leave this page.

Personalising the screen

▶ Press the pencil in the **"Customize Touchscreen"** part.

A representation of the organisation of the different home page **(HOME)** Widgets is displayed.

Tip
A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

Organising the Widgets on a home page (HOME)

To move a Widget, press and hold it, then drag it to the desired location.

Adding a page

▶ To add a page, press **"Page"** on the left of the screen.

▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Personalising the instrument panel

▶ Press the pencil in the **"Customize Driver Information"** part.

The modification of the organisation of the different Widget is displayed on the instrument panel in real time.

Tip
A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

Adding a Widget

▶ To add a Widget, press **"Widget"** on the left of the screen.

Or

▶ Press one of these buttons on the screen.

▶ Select the desired Widget.

▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Deleting a Widget

▶ To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

Personalising i-Toggles

(depending on equipment)

In the central screen, display the page containing the button that you want to include.

> **Tip**
> The shortcuts are used to access an application (air conditioning page, radio page, etc.) or to perform an action (set the temperature to 21°, call a selected directory contact, etc.).

▶ Press and hold the shortcut you want to replace.

A panel is displayed on the central screen with all of the eligible shortcuts in boxes.
A notification also informs you of the next step to perform.
Select the new shortcut required. It will be duplicated in i-Toggles and will replace the one originally selected. A notification also informs you of this.

▶ To exit this function at any time, press this button or press the main "Home" button.

Radio

Choosing The Media

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

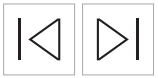
▶ Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming via a USB socket, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®).

Playing A Track

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ If several devices are connected, press this button to select one.

Once the device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing the **"Playlist"** or **"Library"** button.



▶ Short press: go to the previous/ next track.

Long press: fast-forward/rewind in a track.

Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.

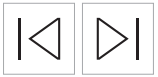
Random track playback.

Sound deactivation/reactivation.

Selecting A Radio Station

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



▶ Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

▶ Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

▶ Press this button.

▶ Enter the frequency values using the virtual keypad.

▶ Press this button to confirm.

A list of stations is available by pressing the **“Stations”** tab.

▶ Press **“Mute”** to activate/deactivate the sound.

Warning
Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the manufacturer, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

Automatic search for radio stations

Via the **"Media"** application.

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the "**Stations**" tab.

The search is carried out automatically.

Memorizing a Radio Station

Select a station.

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Player”** tab.

▶ Press the **"Radio Favorites"** button.

Storing takes place via a short or long press on one of these buttons, or a long press on an existing favourite radio station, which will be replaced.

▶ Press this button to return to the previous page.

Audio Settings

Audio settings can be accessed in 2 different ways.
Via the **Media** application

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.

Or
Via the **Settings** application

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Audio and Radio"** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- Sound Settings.
- Radio Settings.
- Volume Settings.

Activating Traffic Announcements

This function gives priority to listening to **Traffic announcements** alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current radio station is automatically interrupted so that the message can be heard. Normal radio listening resumes as soon as the message is finished.

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.

▶ Activate **“Traffic Announcement (TA)”.**

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

Activating radio station tracking

Via the **"Media"** application.

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Stations"** tab.

The search is carried out automatically.

Changing the waveband

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.

▶ Press this button to change the waveband (FM - AM - DAB) according to the country of sale.

Audio streaming

The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via Bluetooth®, USB (iPod® type) or Mirror Screen®.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Tip
Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets.
The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

Tip
We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Multimedia System

General Information

Steering Wheel Controls

Voice control: Short press, system voice commands (depending on equipment).

Long press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen® (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto) via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute the sound: long press on the decrease volume button.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Incoming call (short press): accept the call.

Call in progress (short press): hang up.
Incoming call(long press): refuse the incoming call.
Out of call(short press): access the call log of the telephone connected via Bluetooth®.
Mirror Screen® connected (short press): access the projected view of the telephone application of your Mirror Screen® equipment.

Radio: automatic search for the previous/ next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).

Media: previous/next track, movement in the lists.
Short press: validate a selection. Out of selection, display the favourite lists.

Applications

Tip
From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.

Help

Watch tutorials.

Media

Select an audio source or radio station.

Mirror Screen®
Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen®: access to the projected view of Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.

Navigation

(depending on equipment)

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Voice commands

(depending on equipment)

Use the system or smartphone voice recognition via the system

Phone

Telephone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a telephone.

Telephone connected: access the call log, contacts and telephone settings.
Two connected telephones: access the contents of the priority telephone with the possibility of changing the priority of the telephone.

Settings

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Voice Commands

First steps

(depending on equipment)

The voice recognition service offers a choice of 20 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.
The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is travelling is not covered by the cellular network.
These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system.
If the chosen language has not been downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.
To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.
Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.
Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.

For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.

Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds. If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.

▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

▶ In the list, select the "Voice Assistant" tab.

Activate/Deactivate:

- "**Listen for (OK Peugeot)**": to invoke the voice recognition using the keyword "**OK Peugeot**".
- "**Data Usage**": to authorise our supplier to re-use your data in order to let him globally improve its capabilities in term of voice recognition and voice assistance.

Tip
Voice Assistant/Data Usage. Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

Opening voice recognition

Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, telephone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

▶ Say "**OK Peugeot**".

or

▶ Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

▶ Press the touch screen button

Warning
To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking. No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "**OK Peugeot**".
- For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
- Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.

Voice command example for air conditioning:

"raise the fan speed"
"Turn on air conditioning"
"i'm too hot"

Voice command example for radio and media:

"I want to listen to michael jackson"
"switch to radio"
"tune to 88.5"

Tip
Media voice commands are only available with an USB connection.

Voice command example for navigation:

"navigate home"
"Navigate me to gabrielle's house"
"search for public parking nearby"

Tip
Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

Voice command example for telephone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"

"call 0113 345 9869"

"Call jonathan"

> **Tip**
> If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up window appears: "**No Device Connected**", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice command example for weather:

"do i need a raincoat"

"how is the weather tonight"

"what is today's humidity level"

ChatGPT

Chat GPT is part of the Connected Services and if the user subscribes to it, it will enable an extended range of functions.
To activate ChatGPT, you can use the same voice command "OK Peugeot".

Navigation

Navigation home screen

(depending on equipment)

Access to additional videos

https://www.tomtom.com/stellantis-connected-nav

▶ Press the " **Navigation** " application to display the navigation home screen.

▶ Press " **Search** " to enter an address or a name.

▶ Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

▶ Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode or to display cardinal directions (N, E, S, W).

▶ Select " **Sound activated** ", " **Alerts only** " and " **Silent** " with successive presses on this button.

▶ Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

Main menu

▶ Press the "**Navigation**" application to display the navigation home screen.

▶ Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

▶ Select "**Search**" to enter an address, name or some points of interest.

▶ Select "**Go home**" using an address previously saved in "Add home".

▶ Select "**Go to work**" using an address previously saved in "My places".

▶ Select "**Recent destinations**" to display the latest destinations searched.

▶ Select "**Current trip**" to open another menu and perform various actions for the current planned route.

▶ Select "**My places**" for quick access to saved places as well as favourite destinations.

▶ Select "**My trips**" to display your favourite routes.

▶ Select "**Parking**" to display the various parking options in the area.

▶ Select "**Service station**" to display the different service stations on the current route or near the current location.

▶ Select "**TomTom service**" to check the network status.

▶ Select "**Settings**" to enter the vehicle type and to personalise the display, voice instructions, map options, trip planning, sounds and alerts, and system information.

▶ Select this button to display details on software versions as well as legal information. Details of the Open Source software libraries used and their licence URLs.

Tip
Regular connection to a secure Wi-Fi access point automatically updates the installed mapping globally.
The mapping is also updated using a cellular network, depending on version, country of sale, the vehicle's level of equipment, as well as the subscription to connected services and options.

However, using your smartphone's Wi-Fi and/or cellular networks may incur additional charges if you exceed your data plan.
These charges, if any, will be passed on to your telephone operator's bill.

EV Routing

Tip
EV routing can function without a subscription to Connect PLUS, but it will not receive updates on the status of charging stations.

The navigation system incorporates several features designed to guide drivers through efficient and worry-free journeys.
The system will adapt the routing of journeys to minimize travel duration, maximize EV efficiency and vehicle range and provide real-time information on charging points to help drivers find somewhere to charge along their journey.
The system will try to find the optimum route, preferring the most powerful charging stations to reduce the number of stops, and trying to maximize driving speed. If the journey cannot be completed with the current level of charge, the EV navigation will automatically add charging stops.
EV navigation shows the details of the charging station, the estimated time of arrival at the station, the estimated charge time, and the estimated time of arrival at the final destination.
The EV navigation system will automatically adapt if the conditions change (availability, detour) and continuously update the route to keep the next charging stop within range, and notifies the driver in case of recalculation.

At the end of a trip, the distance, trip duration, average energy consumption and remaining range will be displayed.

Navigation settings

Open the **Navigation settings** page.
On the **Map & Display page**, the **Range visualization**, which shows the remaining range on the map can be enabled/disabled.
On the **Planning & Travel** page, the desired level of charge when arriving at a charger and the desired state of charge when arriving at a destination can be set.
On the **Vehicle Setting** page, the charging station's socket can be selected, depending on the cable present onboard.

Customizing battery management

EV Routing provides two ways to manage battery economy: through **Route Options** for one-time adjustments and Settings (**Options > Planning & Travel**) for default preferences.
To set a one-time battery level for your destination (Route Options):

▶ Open the **Route Options** menu.
▶ Select the desired battery level upon arrival at your destination.

The system will automatically calculate charging stops and the charge percentage needed at each stop.

Tip
This change applies only to the current trip and does not modify default settings.

To set a minimum battery level for all trips (**Options > Planning & Travel**):

▶ Go to **Settings > Options > Planning & Travel** in the navigation system.

► Set the minimum state of charge for both charging stops and destination arrival.

These settings will be used for all future trips unless manually changed.

CONNECTIVITY

Connecting a wired device by USB

The USB connection of a mobile device allows it to be recharged. It makes its authorised media content available to the system (Media content of iPod® type).

Only one USB socket will allow a Mirror Screen connection (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto) for the compatible connected mobile devices and to use some of the device's applications on the touch screen.

For more information on the USB socket compatible with the Mirror Screen® function, refer to the "**Getting to know your vehicle**" section.
The mobile device is in charging mode when connected with the USB cable.

Tip
It is recommended that you use your device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

Warning
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Bluetooth® connection

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle's system via Bluetooth® provides access to its contents and its "Media" streaming. It also enables the Phone function to be activated.
The connection can be initiated either from the mobile device's Bluetooth® menu or from the vehicle's system, which requires opening the "My Devices" menu for the first connection.

Tip
In some cases, you will need to unlock your device and check the authorisation to synchronise contacts and recent calls.
Some features may not be supported by your device.
For information on the partial or full compatibility of device models or smartphones, please connect to the Brand's national website.

Pairing procedure from a device

► From the Bluetooth® menu on your mobile device, select the system's name from the list of detected devices.

Tip
In order to make your system's Bluetooth® visible, first open the "**My Devices**" menu on the system.

Continue the first connection procedure proposed by the system and on the device.
For example: validating pairing codes.

Pairing procedure from the system

► Press the **"Settings"** application. In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

► Select **"My Devices".**

► Select the name of the mobile device that you want to connect, from:

– The list of known devices (if the device has already been connected to the system).
or
– The list of detected devices (if the device has never been connected to the system or previously deleted from the system).

Tip
A mobile device already connected to the system will be able to reconnect automatically when the vehicle is started, once the user profile has been selected.
Automatic reconnection is put on hold as soon as the "My Devices" menu is opened.
This is to allow the system to make its Bluetooth® visible for the connection of a new device.
The system is disconnected when the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off.

Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of devices already connected and detected when a user profile is selected.
The priority reconnected devices are those which have been linked to the selected user profile or, failing this, the last connected devices.

Wi-Fi connection

The system has an external Wi-Fi connection mode for performing system updates.

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

▶ Select **"Wi-Fi".**

▶ **Activate/Deactivate "Wi-Fi".**

The system starts a search for near-by Wi-Fi networks. This may take a few seconds.

Select the Wi-Fi network to connect to and enter its password.

Warning
To protect your system, only networks with a sufficient level of security are allowed to connect. WPA2 encryption level, equivalent to a domestic level, is required.

Tip
Any network already connected to the system will reconnect automatically as soon as it is detected by the system and after having previously activated the Wi-Fi function.

Tip
The Wi-Fi connection of the system to a device already connected using a Mirror Screen® wireless connection is not possible.
In this case, favour a Mirror Screen® connection using the USB socket.

Device management

For each device already connected to the system using a wireless connection (Bluetooth® or wireless Mirror Screen® connection), it is possible to determine a preferred connection mode (depending on the functions the device can support). It is therefore possible to determine whether the device should be connected using a wireless Bluetooth® connection or a wireless Mirror Screen® connection each time the system is started once the profile is chosen.

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

▶ Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.

▶ Press this button to manage the connection of a device.

Choose a connection type then confirm this choice by pressing “**APPLY".**

Deleting a device

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

▶ Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.

▶ Press this button.

▶ Press **"DELETE".**

▶ Confirm by pressing **“YES”.**

Warning
Some devices that have just been deleted from the system request a connection, refuse this request.

Screen Mirroring

Tip
When a smartphone is connected using Mirror Screen®, the vehicle's location and some vehicle data is sent to the smartphone (e.g. brand, left-hand or right-hand drive, day/night mode, physical speed).

Apple®CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connecting just one Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

Tip
First activate the Siri® function on your Apple® smartphone.

If the device fails to connect, refer to the Apple website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the CarPlay function in the **Settings, Bluetooth** menu of your smartphone.
In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the **"i"** next to the relevant vehicle and deactivate CarPlay.

Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen.

Apple®CarPlay® is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. In some cases, it may be necessary to unlock your device.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

Tip
Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection (Apple®CarPlay®); refer to the "**Getting to know your vehicle**" section.
It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be initiated from the "**My Devices"** menu.

First activate the smartphone's CarPlay® function.
In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the "i" next to the relevant vehicle and activate CarPlay.

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Connectivity".**

▶ Select **"My Devices"** to display the device to be connected to Apple®CarPlay®.

If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Apple®CarPlay® as the wireless connection mode.
If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth® connection" section).
The system detects if the smartphone is 11 compatible with Apple®CarPlay® and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth® on your device.

▶ As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the **"Apple®CarPlay®"** interface.

▶ To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steeringmounted control button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Connecting just one Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

Tip
First install the **"Android Auto"** application via "Play Store" on your smartphone.
The **"Android Auto"** function requires a compatible smartphone.
If the device fails to connect, refer to the Android Auto website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.
To ensure an optimum wireless connection, we recommend avoiding placing your smartphone too close to other Wi-Fi networks to which it can connect automatically.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the Android Auto wireless function, in the **Settings** menu of the "**Android Auto**" application of your smartphone.

▶ Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen®.

Android Auto is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

Tip
Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection (Android Auto); refer to the "**Getting to know your vehicle**" section.
It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Android Auto smartphone can be initiated from the "**My Devices**" menu.
First activate the smartphone's Android Auto® wireless function, in the **Settings** menu of the "**Android Auto**" application of your smartphone.

▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

▶ In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.

▶ Select "**My Devices**" to display the device to be connected to Android Auto.

If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth® connection" section).
The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Android Auto and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.
If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Android Auto as the wireless connection mode.

The subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® on your device.

▶ As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the "**Android Auto**" interface.

▶ To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steeringmounted control button.

Media

Changing source

▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

▶ Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming via a USB socket, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®).

Phone

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a display overlaid on the screen.
Accepting the call:

▶ Briefly press the telephone button on the steering-mounted controls to accept an incoming call.

Or

▶ Press this touch screen button.

Ending the call:

▶ press and hold...

The telephone button on the steering-mounted controls to refuse the call.

Or

▶ Press this touch screen button.

▶ Press this button on the touch screen to send an automatic message indicating that you are driving.

Making a call

Warning
Using your phone is strongly discouraged while driving.
Park the vehicle.

Making a call using the numeric keypad

▶ Press the **"Phone"** application.

In the list, select the **"Keypad"** tab then dial the number.

▶ Press this button to make the call.

Making a call using the list of recent calls

▶ Press the **"Phone"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Calls"** tab.

Or
Briefly press...

the telephone button on the steering-mounted controls.

Select and call one of the most recent numbers called in the list.

> **Tip**
> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Calling a contact

▶ Press the **"Phone"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Contacts"** tab.

▶ Select the desired contact in the displayed list.

▶ Call the contact by selecting one of the contact's phone numbers.

Organising the contact list

▶ Press the **"Phone"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab to display the telephone-related settings.

▶ Choose to list the contacts starting with their first or last name.

Connecting two phones

> **Tip**
> The system allows two phones to be connected simultaneously:
> – 2 via Bluetooth® connection.
> or
> – 1 via Bluetooth® connection and 1 via Mirror Screen® connection.
> Display and content priority is given to the last phone used.

To change the priority of the phone:

▶ Press the **"Phone"** application.

▶ Press this button to change the priority of the phone.

Settings

Configuring the screen display

Press the **"Settings"** application.
In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.
It is possible to configure:

- the screen colours associated with the interior ambient lighting. Refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.
- the sound ambience.
- the visual welcome and goodbye animations.
- the screen transition animations.

Managing the system connectivity

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.

▶ In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

It is possible to manage:

- The Bluetooth® connection.
- The Mirror Screen® smartphone connections (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto).
- The Wi-Fi connection.
- The privacy mode.

Configuring the system

▶ Press the **"Settings"** application.
▶ In the list, select the **"System"** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the language.
- the date & time.
- the unit of distance and consumption (kWh/100 miles - miles, mi/kWh - miles, km/kWh - km).
- the temperature unit (Fahrenheit, Celsius).

It is also possible to reset the system configuration.

Selecting the language

▶ Select "**Language"** to change the language.

▶ Press the desired language.

▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Setting the date and time

▶ Select **"Date and Time"** to modify the date and time.

▶ Press the desired language.

"Automatic Date and Time" is activated by default, so that the setting is made automatically according to your geolocation.

To adjust manually, deactivate **"Automatic Date and Time".**
Press the **"Select Time Zone"** field then define a time zone.

▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Press the **"Set Time"** line then set the time.

▶ Press this button to confirm.

Press the **"Set Date"** line then set the date.

▶ Press this button to confirm.

▶ Select the Time Format field (12-hour / 24-hour).

▶ Select the Date Format field (MM-DD-YY / YYYY-MM-DD / DD/MM/YYYY).

Tip
The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Help

▶ Press the **"Help"** application.

select the **"Tutorials"** tab to watch explanatory videos for a quick start on screen management, certain driving aids and voice recognition.

User Manual

▶ Select the display language.

The handbook home page is displayed.
It presents the different possibilities for accessing the information sought:

Visual search

Access to subjects via pictures representing the exterior and interior of the vehicle.

Indicator lamps

Access to the descriptions/operation of the instrument panel warning/indicator lamps.

System

Access to sections dedicated to the various audio equipment and telematics systems.

Contents

Access to subjects via the main sections of the handbook.

Visual search

▶ Press Visual search.
▶ Press one of the pictures located at the bottom of the screen.

▶ Press one of the bullet points in the enlarged view.

There are two cases:
– Direct display of the subject, if only one subject is associated with the bullet point.
– Display of a list of subjects, if several subjects are associated with the bullet point.

Indicator lamps

▶ Press **Indicator lamps.**

The mosaic of warning/indicator lamps is displayed.
The warning/indicator lamps are sorted by colour.

Press the warning/indicator lamp concerned; the corresponding content is displayed.

Back to the mosaic of warning/indicator lamps.

System

▶ Press **System.**

The list of audio and telematics systems is displayed.
Press on the section concerned; the list of subjects is displayed.
Press on the subject concerned; the corresponding content is displayed.

If the subject has more than one page, drag horizontally.

Back to the list of subjects.

Contents

▶ Press **Contents.**

The list of sections is displayed.
Press on the section concerned; the list of subjects is displayed.
Press on the subject concerned; the corresponding content is displayed.

If the subject has more than one page, drag horizontally.

Back to the list of subjects.

Remotely operable additional functions (PHEV or BEV)

(Depending on country of sale)

Download on the App Store | GET IT ON Google Play

The following functions are available from the **MYPEUGEOT APP** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

▶ Download the **MYPEUGEOT APP** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.

▶ Create an account.

▶ Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).

For more information on **Engine Data**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
Network coverage. In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.
A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

CONNECT ONE

Tip
This service is included for 10 years from the date at which the warranty starts, and is automatically activated when you install and activate Connect PLUS.

CONNECT PLUS

Tip
This service is included for 6 months from the date at which the warranty starts.
Activating Connect PLUS will automatically activate Connect ONE.

After the creation of your account via **MyPeugeot App**, the installation of Connect PLUS is necessary to access the connected services.
Connect PLUS provides CONNECTED NAVIGATION, which includes traffic information and map updates, as well as Voice recognition.

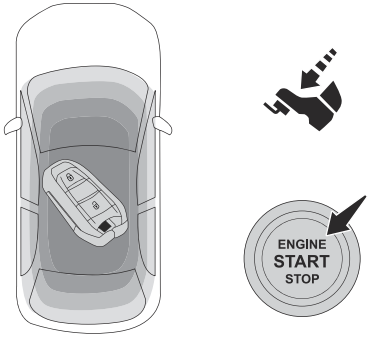
After the included 6 months subscription period, you will need to visit the Peugeot Connected Services store to renew your Connect PLUS pack services.

Starting Procedure

Tip
The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
The electronic key is also detected in the boot.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.
If there is still a problem, refer to the "**Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off**" section.

STARTING/SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Starting



- Select mode **P** or **N** on the automatic gearbox, then depress the brake pedal.
- Press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.
In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the **"START/STOP"** button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

Tip
Petrol / Hybrid engines
After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Tip
Hybrid engines
The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

Starting PHEV vehicles

- Fully depress the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button for approximately 2 seconds.
- Keep the foot on the pedal until the **READY** indicator lamp comes on, indicating the activation of the rechargeable hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).

Warning
To exit **Park** mode, wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to come on.

By default, the system starts in **Electric** mode.
Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or outside temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.
It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

Warning
When the vehicle starts in electric mode, it makes no noise.
Pay particular attention to pedestrians and cyclists who may not hear the vehicle coming despite the pedestrian horn.

Switching off

- Immobilise the vehicle using the parking brake.
- Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox.
- Press the **START/STOP** button.
- For **PHEV** vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is switched off.

The automatic gearbox locks in mode **P.**

Tip
If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Warning
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Warning
Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Starting/Switching off BEV vehicles

Starting

The drive selector must be in mode **P.**

- ► Fully depress the brake pedal and briefly press the **START/STOP** button.
- ► Keep the foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator lamp comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.
- ► With the foot on the brake, select the mode **D** or **R.**
- ► Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel lights up and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Switching off

- ► Press the **START/STOP** button.

Before exiting the vehicle, check that:
– The drive selector is in mode **P.**
– The READY indicator lamp is off.

Tip
If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for stopping are not satisfied, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine

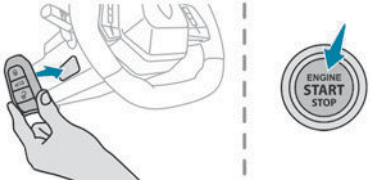
With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the **"START/STOP"** button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

- ► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



- ► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
- ► **With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector,** select mode **P,** then depress the brake pedal.
- ► Press the **"START/STOP"** button.

The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off

If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- ► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "START/STOP" button for approximately 5 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

▶ Press the **START/STOP** button for about 5 seconds.

Stop & Start Automatic Function

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams).
The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.
The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.
If the function is deactivated while the engine is in STOP mode, it will restart immediately.

Associated indicator lamps

Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode).

Function deactivated or malfunction.

Warning

Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the hood, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

Warning

Driving on flooded roads. Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:

- **With a manual gearbox**: when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**: with the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, when the brake pedal is depressed until the vehicle stops or when the mode **N** is selected, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases

he engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Sport mode selected (depending on equipment).

- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

> **Tip**
> After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

> **Tip**
> During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again: **With a manual gearbox**: when the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

With an automatic gearbox:

- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: when the brake pedal is released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: when the mode **D** or **M** is selected.
- With the selector in mode P and the brake pedal depressed: when the mode **R**, **N**, **D** or **M** is selected.
- When the reverse gear is engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- Deselecting the Sport mode (depending on equipment).
- Automatic gearbox in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the **START/STOP** button.

> **Warning**
> **12 V battery.** The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
> All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

E-Auto mode (Hybrid 48 V)

The petrol engine stops when low power or torque is required and in stabilised conditions. The petrol engine is restarted by the belt starter.

The e-Auto mode can switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

– When the operating strategies permit.
– Vehicle speed up to 145 km/h (90 mph).
– When the driver releases the accelerator pedal in stabilised conditions or in deceleration.
– During the stop phases.
Restarting is only achieved by the belt starter until the torque demand is available, if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. When the torque demand is insufficient, the petrol engine restarts.

> **Tip**
> Using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine.

The e-Auto mode cannot switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

– The state of charge is less than 30% of the traction battery energy.
– There is a need for vacuum brake assist depending on the altitude.
– The Sport mode is selected.
– Maintaining thermal comfort in the passenger compartment (heating, air conditioning, demisting/defrosting).

Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**
The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.

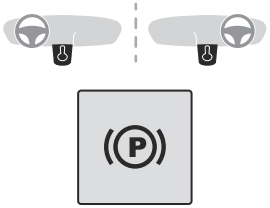
Function deactivated, this indicator lights up in the instrument panel.

Tip
If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

Brakes

Parking Brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



At any time, with the engine running:

- To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.
- To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

Warning
The driver must apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message **"Parking brake applied".**
The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message **"Parking brake released".**
The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

Warning
In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Warning
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

Warning

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P.**
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

Tip
If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ▶ Briefly pull the control.

The control indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.

The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.

With an automatic gearbox

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D, M** or **R.**
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

With a drive selector

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D** or **R.**
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

Warning
When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

Warning
It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

Tip
In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

Warning
In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, place the chock against one of the wheels.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode P will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- ▶ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control.

- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Pull the control for 2 seconds.

This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- ▶ Release the control and the brake pedal.

From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.

- ▶ Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

Warning
The emergency braking should only be used in exceptional situations (e.g. brake pedal failure, driver unwell, assisted driving).

In this context, the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released. The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message **"Parking brake fault"** will be displayed on the instrument panel.

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

- ▶ in this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required.
Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Active emergency braking

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Regenerative Braking (PHEV)

Using B Mode

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

Warning
The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

- ▶ Use the **B** button on the Drive selector to activate/deactivate the mode.

When the mode is active, D on the instrument panel is replaced with B.
The mode status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Using the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces the use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

Tip
The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Warning
In some situations (e.g. battery with high level of charge, extreme temperatures, extended use of regenerative braking e.g. prolonged downhill driving), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

Regenerative Braking (BEV)

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal.
The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

Warning

Warning

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

There are three levels of braking, controlled by using the paddles behind the steering wheel :

+ Decreases regenerative braking effect.

− Increases regenerative braking effect.

For each level of deceleration, the information appears on the dashboard in the form of one or many more "down" arrows close to D.

The deceleration level is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Tip
If the conditions for the system to function are not met, a message is displayed on the cluster.

Warning

Warning

In some situations (e.g. battery with high charge level, prolonged use of regenerative braking e.g, extended downhill driving, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

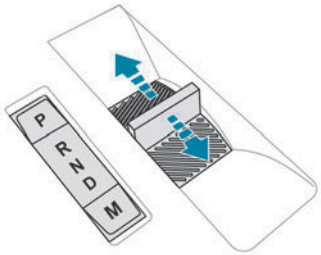
Tip
The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Transmission

Automatic Gearbox (EAT6)

6-speed automatic gearbox with push selector for petrol vehicles.
It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Push selector



P. Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse

N. Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

D. Driving in automatic mode

The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

M. Driving in manual mode
Press this button to switch to manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

- In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

• Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
• Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

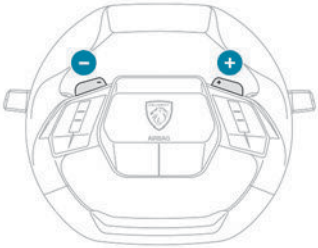
Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Steering-mounted controls

(Depending on equipment)
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



► Pull the **"+"** or **"-"** paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P	Parking
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D1...6	Automatic forward gear
M1...6	Manual forward gear

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Warning
With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

Tip
If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Warning
At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver’s door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

Warning
In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.

Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

- ► Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ► Start the engine.
- ► With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R.**
- ► Release the brake pedal.
- ► Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

Warning
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable freewheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Mode **D** locks in third gear.
The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.
You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive carefully.
Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Warning

You must stop the vehicle.

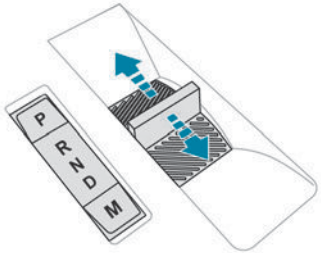
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (E-DCS6/7)

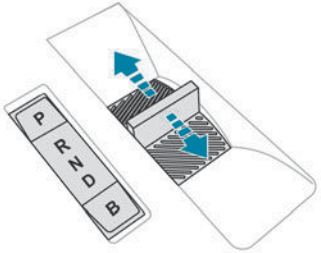
6-speed or 7-speed electrified dual-clutch automatic gearbox with push selector for respectively hybrid 48 V vehicles or PHEV vehicles. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel. It includes an electric motor, which improves the performance of the petrol engine, reduces fuel consumption and drives in all-electric.

Push selector

For Hybrid 48 V vehicles



For PHEV vehicles



P. Park mode

R. Reverse mode

N. Neutral mode
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

D. Automatic mode

B. Automatic mode with increased regenerative braking

- In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

• Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
• Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode. **P** is automatically engaged when
● the ignition is switched off
● the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
● N has been selected for some time

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage R, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal must be depressed.

Caution
Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

This mode is for normal driving.

Automatic mode B

This mode activates increased regenerative braking by releasing the accelerator pedal, with no need to depress the brake pedal.
The brake pedal will be used only for emergency situations.
When in mode **D**, press **B** to activate or deactivate the mode. **B** will be indicated in the cluster.
Mode **B** is deactivated by default when ignition is switched on.

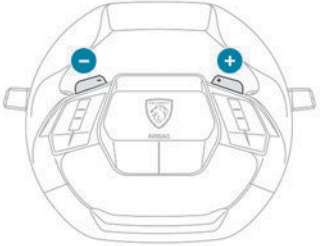
Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Steering-mounted controls

(Depending on equipment)
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



► Pull the "**+**" or "**-**" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P. Parking

R. Reverse

N.	Neutral
D.	Automatic forward gear
M1...6	Manual forward gear (Hybrid 48 V)
B	Automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function (PHEV)

The gear engaged is displayed in Manual and Sport mode.
However, in all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.
The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Electric motor Special case (Hybrid)

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides
12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.
The electric motor has the following features:

- Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimising the performance of the petrol engine.
- Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.
- Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the state of charge is too low.
- Provide all-electric driving only.

These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode:

- e-Boost.
- e-Creeping.
- e-Launch.
- e-Queueing.
- e-Parking.

A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

Tip
When mode **P** or **N** is selected on the automatic gearbox, the noise level in the engine compartment may increase due to the start of the charging phase of the traction battery: this is normal and does not represent a malfunction.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Warning
With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

Tip
If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Warning
At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver’s door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

Warning
In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

For hybrid versions

These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.

Tip
These functions are only available if the traction battery is sufficiently charged.
These five functions cannot be deactivated.

e-Launch

With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.
By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Creeping

With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode

without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Queueing

This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.

e-Parking

This function allows parking manoeuvres to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Boost

This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox.
By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

> **Tip**
> Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

For PHEV versions

The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.

Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.
The petrol engine can also be switched off in manual mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.
For hybrid vehicles, the all-electric potential of the driving mode used **(Normal or Eco)** is also retained.

> **Tip**
> For hybrid vehicles, using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine. If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

Starting the vehicle

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Start the petrol engine by depressing the brake pedal until the engine is running at a stabilised engine speed.
- ▶ With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal.
- ▶ Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The petrol engine may stop after the first start if operating conditions allow (e.g. state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, efficiency of the catalytic converter, torque demand, selected driving mode, thermal comfort of the passenger compartment).
Then, the vehicle moves off immediately in allelectric (e-Launch function).

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable freewheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Depending on the malfunction, the gearbox only shifts in odd or even gears, locks in one gear or loses some gears.
For hybrid vehicles, the paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.

You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive carefully.
Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

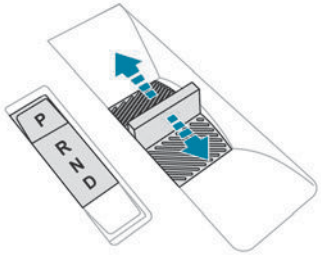
This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Warning

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive Selector (BEV)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function for electric vehicles.
The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.
It also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).

R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with the foot on the brake pedal.

N. Neutral
To move the vehicle with the ignition off and so allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on Free-wheeling, refer to the corresponding section.

D. Drive (automatic forward gear) with an integrated regenerative braking function

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When D or R is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.
P is automatically engaged when

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution
Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

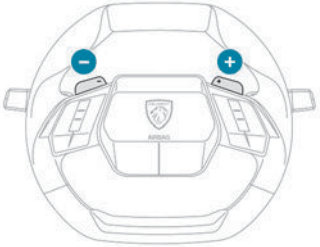
Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

This mode is for normal driving. In this mode, the paddles control the level of regenerative braking. Three braking levels are selectable via the steering wheel paddles.

The respective braking level is indicated by one to three triangle segments in the cluster.



Pull left paddle - to increase the braking force and pull right paddle + to decrease.
Use the maximum braking force when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.
The braking level setting is saved when ignition is switched off.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P:	Park
R :	Reverse.
N :	Neutral.
D :	Drive (automatic forward gear).

Operation

► In mode **N,** with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

- ► Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
- ► Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

► In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.

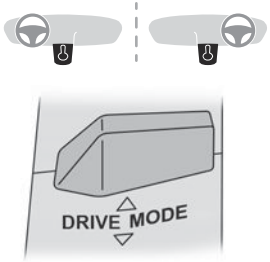
► In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.

► To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Driving modes

Drive Modes

The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle.
Driving modes are selected using the following control:



► Press the control to display the modes on the touch screen.

► Select the desired driving mode on the left side of the window.

► Close the window by clicking the cross.

With an electric vehicle, when starting the vehicle, no mode can be selected until the **READY** indicator lamp is displayed.
When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated on the instrument panel (except **Normal** mode).
The selected mode is activated immediately.
With the Advanced Grip Control system, additional driving modes are available.
For more information on **Advanced Grip Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

For ICE or Hybrid 48 V versions

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Normal** driving mode is selected by default.

Normal

To restore the default settings.

Eco

To reduce energy consumption by reducing the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without deactivating them.

Sport

With an automatic gearbox: to obtain more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator, gear changes, displaying the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel (depending on version) and activation/deactivation of the display colour (depending on version).
The selection of the **Sport** mode deactivates the Stop & Start function / e-Auto mode.

Tip

Coasting mode (Petrol)

Depending on version and engine, with the gear selector in mode **D**, in **Eco** and **Normal** modes, gradually and fully releasing the accelerator pedal allows free-wheeling which can save fuel.
A drop in engine speed is normal (rev counter at idle, drop in engine noise).

For PHEV versions

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Electric** driving mode is selected by default.

BEV

Allows driving using 100% electrical energy.
The maximum speed is approximately 84 mph (135 km/h).
When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **Electric** mode, the message **"Electric mode currently unavailable"** is displayed on the instrument panel. The vehicle automatically changes to **Hybrid** mode.

Conditions of activation

- Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore recommended. **Electric** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.
- Outside temperature between approximately -5°C and 45°C.

Manually exiting the mode

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal, or
► Select another mode.

Tip
In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.

Warning
In the event of multiple starts of the internal combustion engine without a sufficient rise in temperature, **Electric** mode may be temporarily unavailable (natural phenomenon of dilution of fuel in oil).
The message "**Electric mode unavailable: automatic operation in progress**" then appears on the instrument panel.
To regain normal electrical operation, drive approximately 50 miles (80 km) in "motorway" conditions or approximately 125 miles (200 km) in urban conditions.
This phenomenon does not cause any mechanical or electrical damage. It can occur several times in the life of the vehicle.

Hybrid

To optimise the vehicle's fuel consumption by managing the **alternating or simultaneous operation of the two types of engine**, depending on driving conditions and driving style.
In **Hybrid** mode, it is possible to drive in 100% electric mode if the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration requirements are moderate.

Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving in order to benefit from the maximum performance of the vehicle.

Electric power is used to supplement the petrol engine as long as there is energy left in the battery.

For BEV versions

Each time the ignition is switched on, **Normal** mode is selected by default.

Normal

This optimises the driving range and dynamic performance.

Eco

Optimises energy consumption, by reducing the output of the heating and air conditioning (without actually deactivating them) and limiting both motor torque and power.

Tip

Kick-down

In **Normal** and **Eco** modes, it is always possible to obtain maximum torque and power by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

Sport

Enables more dynamic driving, acting on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes with a drive selector and the possibility of displaying the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel.

4WD (4-wheel drive)

In addition to the driving modes, **Normal, Eco** and **Sport**, some electric vehicles have this special mode.
Improves the vehicle's grip at low and moderate speeds by driving all 4 wheels continuously.

4WD mode (4-wheel drive) is especially suited to driving on snow-covered roads and difficult terrain (e.g. mud, sand) as well as ford crossings, at moderate speed.
If the system does not detect a situation of wheel slipping or poor grip after 300 metres of driving, it switches to **Normal** mode.

> **Tip**
> This mode will be even more effective if the vehicle is fitted with suitable tyres, such as winter tyres.

The grip can be improved up to 84 mph (135 km/h); above this speed, the vehicle is driven by the front wheels only.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

> **Tip**
> The only petrol fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

ICE or Hybrid 48 V approximately 55L and PHEV approximately 60L

Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, about **6 litres** of fuel remain.
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

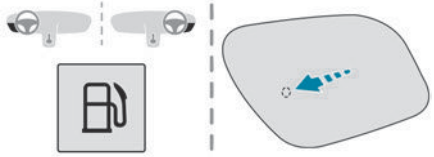
> **Tip**
> A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

> **Warning**
> **Stop & Start / e-Auto mode**
> Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode or in stand-by; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

Any addition of fuel must be in quantities of at least 10 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

▶ **Always switch off the engine.**



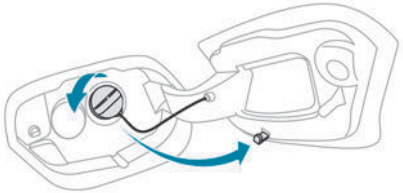
▶ For PHEV vehicles only, to unlock the filler flap, press the flap unlocking button on the dashboard.

▶ Then to open, press the rear of the filler flap.

▶ For other types of vehicles, to open the filler flap, with the vehicle unlocked, press the rear of the filler flap.

> **Tip**
> **PHEV vehicles**
> After pressing the button on the dashboard, the filler flap may not open for several minutes. A sound is emitted when the filler flap opens.
> If the flap becomes stuck, press and hold the button on the dashboard for more than 3 seconds.

- ▶ Select a pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).



- ▶ Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support on the filler flap (depending on version).
- ▶ Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).
- ▶ Fill the tank.

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cutout. Doing so may cause malfunctions.

- ▶ Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right (depending on version).
- ▶ Push the fuel filler flap to close it.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be inserted.

! Warning

If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Charging

General Recommendations

These recommendations and general information apply to electrified vehicles:

- Hybrid 48 V
- PHEV
- BEV

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

! Warning

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

! Danger

In the event of a problem

All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, purple cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

High voltage system

! Danger

The High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, dealer recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.

- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

Danger
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.
The Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

Danger
In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.

Warning

High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Warning

In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Move away from the vehicle.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning

In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

Warning
This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

Hybrid 48 V vehicles

Electrical system

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electrical circuit of the Hybrid 48 V system is identified by purple cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

Traction battery

The 48 V Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.
The traction battery is automatically charged to ensure that the charge level is always around 50% of the maximum level, in order to fully exploit the Hybrid 48 V functionality and, at the same time, always have some capacity available for the energy recovery operation.
It is located under the front left seat.
The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route and the ageing of its components.

Tip
The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

Warning
To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, Stellantis recommends that you:

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

Warning

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and +30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Carry out the charging procedure for the traction battery (48V) via the accessory battery (12V) and the DC/DC converter.
Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the charging the batteries using a battery charger procedure.

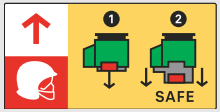
PHEV, BEV vehicles - Specific recommendations

These recommendations and specific information are only applicable to PHEV and BEV.
They introduce the control unit (mode 2) required to carry out the standard charging at home.

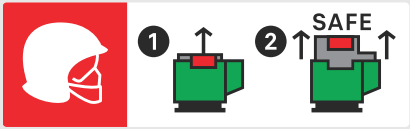
Warning
These labels are intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.

No other person must touch the device shown on the following labels:

PHEV:



BEV:



Warning
Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect/disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Caution
To preserve the range of your vehicle and the durability of the battery, the manufacturer recommends that :

- The battery should be charged only up to 80% as much as possible.
- Never allow the battery charge to reach 0%
- In case of long-term storage (more than 12h) when the level of charge of the traction battery is low or high, prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C or above +60°C for more than 24h.
- Avoid charging the vehicle when the temperature is below 0°C (except if the vehicle has been driving for more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
- Do not use your vehicle's traction battery as an energy source unless your vehicle is fitted with the Vehicle to Load (V2L) system.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the traction battery of the vehicle.

Caution

When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

Traction battery

Overheating

If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

- ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

► Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

Danger
A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

Warning

In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposal of the traction battery
The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of dealer are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the dealer dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, dealer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.
Precautions
PHEV or BEV vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations for maximum electromagnetic field limits established by the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions or instructions to ensure that it is guaranteed to work in an environment which meets the recommendations of the ICNIRP.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

Warning

In case of doubt

Domestic or accelerated charging (mode 2 or 3): do not remain inside or near the vehicle, or near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.
Superfast charging (mode 4 ; Electric): do not use the system yourself and avoid approaching public fast charging points.
Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

Charging system

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles** and the **Specific recommendations on PHEV or BEV vehicles.**

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

Warning
An electric vehicle's powertrain can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

Danger

In the event of a problem

All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

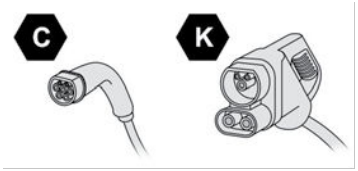
Charging cables, sockets and chargers

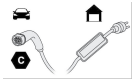
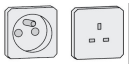
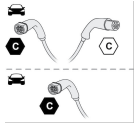
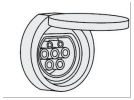
The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables.
The charging cables supplied with the vehicle are compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are traveling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cables.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

Identification labels on charging sockets/ connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit 	Conventional electrical socket (depending on country) 	Charge limited to a maximum of 10 A
Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side)	**green'up** type socket	Charge limited to a maximum of 16 A
Mode 3 charging cable  Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Accelerated charging unit socket. 	Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A per phase.
	Accelerated charging unit.	
Mode 4 charging cable Identification labels **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Superfast DC charging station	Up to 250 A.

Tip

The estimated charging time is indicated on the instrument panel when the vehicle is connected. It may vary depending on various factors such as the outside temperature or the quality of the electricity supply.
If the outside temperature is below -10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly. The traction battery may not charge fully.

Caution

Domestic charging cable (mode 2)

It is recommended to have the domestic electrical network inspected by a professional before using it to charge your vehicle.
It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

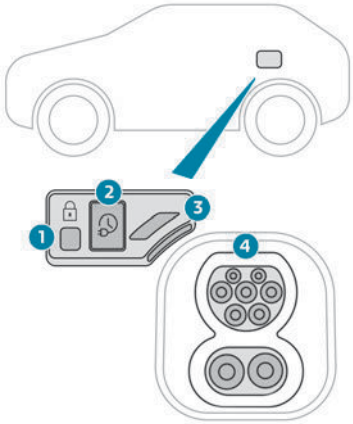
Caution

Accelerated charging unit (mode 3)

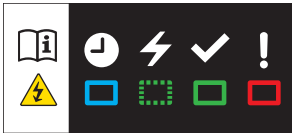
Do not dismantle or modify the accelerated charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
To find out how it is used, please refer to the accelerated charging unit's user instructions.

Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1. Nozzle locking indicator lamp
   Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked into the connector.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Charging indicator lamp
4. Charging connectors

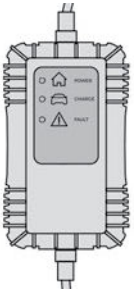


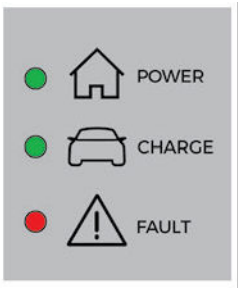
Status of charging indicator lamp	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialisation.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging in progress.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator lamp goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator lamp comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the Keyless Entry and Start system or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

Danger
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

Control unit (mode 2)





POWER

Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE

Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT

Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.

If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly.
If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:

- – If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
- – If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the Owner's Manual before use.

1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with PEUGEOT vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Messages and related alerts

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
(green)				Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
(green)	(green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature preconditioning sequence.
(green)	(green)		100%	Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
		(red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a dealer before the next charge.
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Charging Procedure

> **Tip**
> For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles** and the Specific recommendations on **BEV.**

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).
For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
When the vehicle is connected, the following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Traction battery charge status (%).
- Remaining range (miles or km).
- Estimated charging time (calculation may take a few seconds).
- Charging speed (miles or km gained per hour).

After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.

For more information on the charging displays on the Instrument panel and the Touch screen, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MYPEUGEOT APP** application.
For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Caution
As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle.
A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

Tip

Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

Warning

Low charge / Driving

Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

Caution

Low charge / Parking

If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

Caution

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month

In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.
Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.
Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the battery disconnection procedure.

Connection

- ▶ Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
- ▶ Press on the symbols on the rear of the charging flap to open it , and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Caution

Before charging

Depending on the context:

- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

For superfast charging

Danger

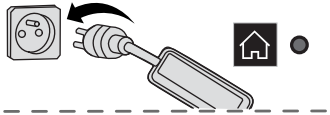
During charging

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or trunk) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.

Never work under the hood:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

Domestic charging (Mode 2)



▶ Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit illuminate, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.

▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

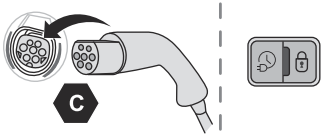
Tip
When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Warning

Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2)

You must not damage the cable.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Accelerated charging, mode 3



▶ Follow the accelerated charging unit user instructions.

▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.

▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

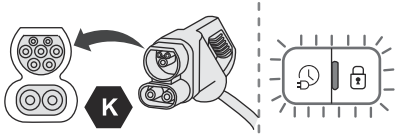
Superfast charging, mode 4

Tip

Before charging

Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:

- 32°F (0°C), charging times may be extended.
- -4°F (-20°C), charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).



▶ You can also pause charging by pressing this button in the flap (in mode 4 only).

▶ Hang up the nozzle on the charger.

▶ Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Tip
When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Disconnection

Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- ▶ If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it.**
- ▶ If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- ▶ In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds.**

Tip
With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

Tip
When charging is complete, the green charging indicator light in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

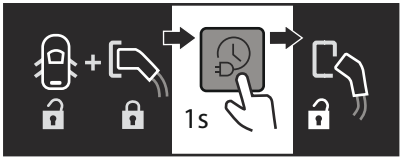
Danger

After charging

Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

Manual unlocking of the charging connector

If the nozzle stays locked in the charging port, press and hold the deferred charging button inside the charging flap to unlock it.



Deferred charging

Deferred charging allows to set a specific time for the start of the charge.
By default, the deferred charging start time is set to be around midnight.
This time can be changed.

- ▶ After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

- ▶ Lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press this button in the charging flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator lamp coming on in blue).

Settings

- ▶ In the **Energy** touch screen application, select the **Charging** tab.
- ▶ Set the charging start time.
- ▶ Press **OK** to confirm.

The setting is saved in the system.

You can also programme the deferred charging function using a smartphone, via the **MYPEUGEOT APP** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Battery Charge Limiter

The Battery Charge Limiter function is part of the systems designed to preserve the battery's integrity and performance for the whole duration of the vehicle's life.
This limit is set at **80%** for daily use.
If you exceptionally want to change the charging limit, e.g. for longer journeys, you can disable this limit and charge up to 100%.

Tip
This limit does not apply for DC fast charging (Mode 4).

Tip
Upon delivery of a new vehicle, it is possible that the charge limiter is not activated. Check and activate the limiter if required.

Activation

If the Battery Charge Limit is not enabled, it is possible to manually enable it.

- ▶ Open the **Energy** App
- ▶ Go to the **Charging** Tab
- ▶ Enable the **Charge Limit**.

Tip
80% charging limit, when activated, is only applied to modes 2 and 3.
Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

- ▶ After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

- ▶ Lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press this button in the charging flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator lamp coming on in blue).

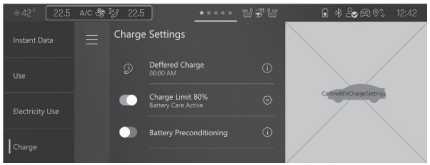
Deactivation

- ▶ Open the **Energy** App
- ▶ Go to the **Charging** Tab
- ▶ Disable the **Charge Limit**.

Caution
It is not recommended to leave the charging limit disabled, it will negatively impact the battery's health over time and reduce overall performance.

Battery Care Mode

Battery Care Mode automates the management of the charge limiter.
If you exceptionally want to change the charging limit.



If you need to charge beyond the default 80% limit, Battery Care Mode allows you to temporarily charge up to 100%.
After reaching 100%, the system will automatically revert to the 80% limit for optimal battery health.

Tip
This limit will not be applied for DC fast charging.

- ▶ After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

Disabling Battery Care Mode

To permanently disable Battery Care Mode:

- ▶ Open the **Energy** app
- ▶ Open the **Charging** tab
- ▶ Tap on the cogwheel next to the charge limiter
- ▶ Tap to disable Battery Care Mode

Tip
After 1500km with Battery Care Mode disabled, a pop-up will be displayed every time the vehicle is started to advise the driver to reactivate Battery Care Mode.

Preserve Battery Capacity

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Never fully discharge the battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit fast charging, as frequent use can accelerate battery wear.

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- When possible, avoid charging the vehicle when the ambient temperature is extremely low or high (e.g. below –10 °C or above +30 °C), especially with fast charging.
  With low temperatures, prefer to start charging after a 20 minutes drive to warm up the battery.
  With high temperatures, prefer charging in the shade or during cooler hours.
- If not strictly necessary, avoid using the high voltage battery as a power source (e.g. for external devices)
- Avoid recharging the high voltage battery with an external generator.

Battery Preconditioning

Battery Preconditioning feature warms up the high-voltage battery to its optimal operating temperature, particularly useful in cold weather conditions (e.g. during winter). For best results, activate preconditioning 30 to 45 minutes before starting a battery charging session or a long drive.

Battery Leakage

Damage to the high voltage battery may cause leakage of toxic fluids or gases, either immediately or over time. To ensure safety, follow these precautions:
Always inform fire and emergency services that the vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery in the event of an accident or fire.
If the coolant level is too low, top it up and have the vehicle inspected by a workshop to identify and fix the cause of the coolant loss.

Warning
Never touch any fluids leaking from the high voltage battery.

Battery preconditioning

To achieve the best charging performance for the battery and provide consistent charging times, the battery needs to achieve a specific temperature.
Battery preconditioning allows to heat up the battery up to this temperature in preparation for a charging stop.

Tip
If the battery charge level is below 30%, preconditioning is not available.

Tip
Activating the preconditioning will use a small portion of the battery charge, impacting the range of the vehicle.

Manual preconditioning

Manual battery preconditioning is activated by the driver when a charging stop is expected.

- ► Open the **Energy** App
- ► Go to the **Charging** Tab
- ► Activate the **Battery preconditioning**.

Tip
Thermal preconditioning is most effective when it is activated 30-45 minutes before starting a charge to allow the battery to reach its ideal temperature.

Automatic Preconditioning with Trip Planner

(Depending on version)
When a trip including charging stops is entered in the navigation system, the system will automatically start the preconditioning process to reach the charging station with the battery ready to charge in optimal conditions.

Automatic Activation before departure

If the vehicle is plugged in (mode 2 or mode 3) and the battery 80% limit charge is disabled, programming a departure time in the screen or via the smartphone app will program both the cabin and battery preconditioning to reach ideal preset temperatures before starting a trip.
This is useful if a charge shortly after departure is expected.

Vehicle to Load (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically.
The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

Warning
Misuse of the adapter can create a risk of electricshocks or fire.

Warning
The device is water resistant, however using it in humid weather conditions, can create a risk of damage to the external

device. The V2L adapter is not protected against submersion.

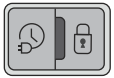
Tip
Charging external devices via the charging port of the vehicle will lower the charging level of the high voltage battery.

Tip
For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

Activation

- ▶ Push the charging port flap to open it.

- ▶ Connect the V2L adapter to the charging port.
- ▶ Press the button on the adapter.
- ▶ When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, connecttheadapterandthe external device.


is flashing green when the externaldevice is being charged. A dedicated page will be shown on the touchscreen.

Deactivation

- ▶ Press the button on the adapter to stop charging the external device.
- ▶ Disconnect the external device.
- ▶ Disconnect th eadapter.
- ▶ Close the charging port flap by pressing it firmly to latch properly.

Plug & Charge

Plug&Charge is specific for BEV models.
This feature enables automatic authentication and payment when the vehicle is connected to a compatible charging station.
Functionalities (based on the vehicle model):

- **Automatic payment method for charging events,** the vehicle authorizes and processes payments without user intervention.
- **Ability for user to enable and disable the feature,** the customer has full control over Plug&Charge settings.
- **Review all charging transactions,** possibility to access detailed charging session history.
- **Onboard & offboard customer experience,** a fully integrated system across in-vehicle displays and external digital platforms ensures a seamless charging journey.

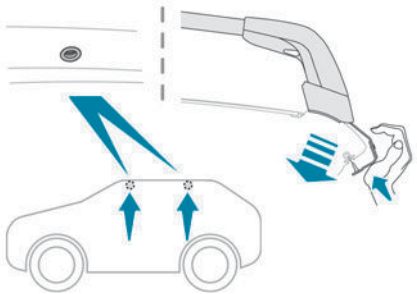
Vehicle Loading

Roof Bars

Warning
As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Warning
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Direct fitting on roof

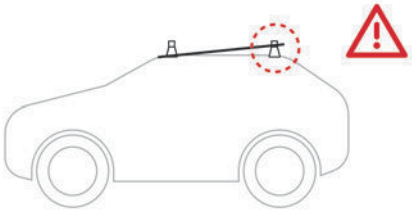


The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

Warning

Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.



Warning

Sunroof

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

Load Reduction Mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Trailer Towing

Tip

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

Warning

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

Warning

Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

Special feature of towing for hybrid vehicles

With both rear wheels on the ground: it is only authorized for short distances (about 9 miles (15 km)) and at reduced speed (maximum 15 mph (25 km/h)).
With all four wheels on the ground: the vehicle can be towed a maximum of 0.06 mile (100 metres) at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) (automatic gearbox in mode **N** and **N** displayed in the instrument panel).

Warning

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N** , then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator lamp off).
Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer.
Use the towing eye **only** to free the vehicle if it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

Tip

Electric vehicles

An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

Towing constraints

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
ICE/Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗
Hybrid 48 V/Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗
PHEV 2WD	✗	✓	✓	✗
BEV 2WD	✗	✓	✓	✗
BEV 4WD	✗	✗	✓	✗

2WD: 2-wheel drive.
4WD: 4-wheel drive.

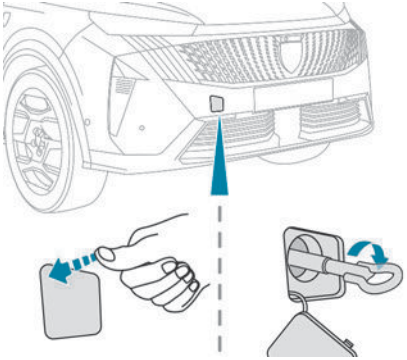
Accessing the tools

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tip
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pressing at its top lefthand corner.
- ▶ Release the cover downwards.

To be towed:

- ▶ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ▶ Install the towbar.
- ▶ Put the gearbox into neutral.

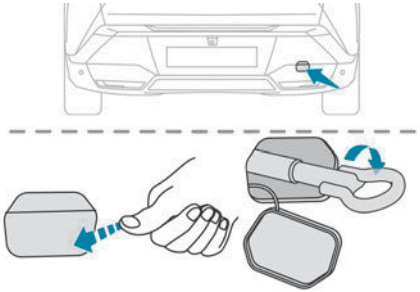
Warning
Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Warning
Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

- ▶ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pressing at its left-hand section.
- ▶ Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

- ▶ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ▶ Install the towbar.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Warning
For Hybrid 48 V models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Towing Device

Load distribution

- ▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

Tip
Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. We recommend having them fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.
For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Warning
If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):

- Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
- Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.

When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

Warning
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Warning

Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

To avoid unintentionally opening the motorised tailgate when operating the towing device:
– Deactivate this function in advance in the vehicle's configuration application.
– Or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

Tip

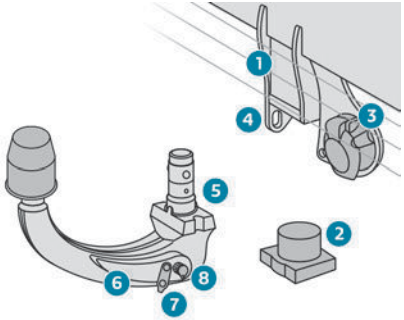
BEV vehicles

An BEV vehicle may be fitted with a towing device.
However, it is not possible to tow a trailer or caravan.
The towing device should only be used for the installation of a bicycle carrier.

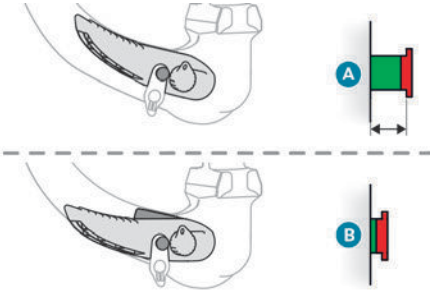
Towing Recommendation

Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Connection socket
4. Safety eye
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking handle
7. Locking/unlocking pin with cap
8. Security key lock



A. **Locked** position (the **green** mark is completely visible); the handle is in an inclined position.

B. **Unlocked** position (the **green** mark is not visible); the handle is in horizontal position.

Tip
To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

Before each use

Verify that the towball is correctly fitted, checking the follow points: – The green mark on the wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball.
– The wheel is in contact with the towball (position A).
– The security key lock is closed and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated.
– The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to shake it with your hand.
If the towball is not locked, the trailer can become detached - risk of an accident!

Warning

During use

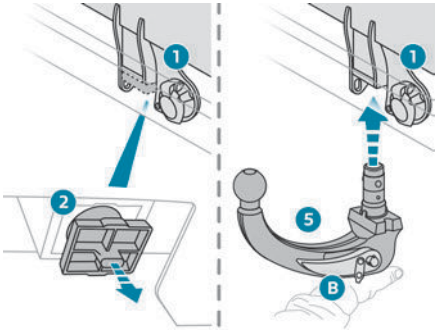
Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle - the Gross Train Weight or GTW.
Always comply with the maximum authorised load on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may become detached from the vehicle - risk of an accident! Before driving, check the headlamp height adjustment and check that the lamps on the trailer operate correctly.
For more information on **Headlamp height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

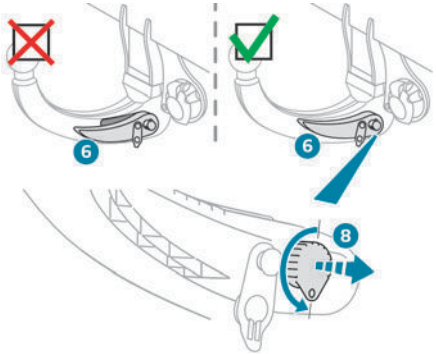
After use

When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, remove the towball and fit the protective plug into the carrier, to provide clear visibility of the number plate and/or its lighting. Also, the connection socket must be tilted to the top position to avoid damaging the equipment while driving.

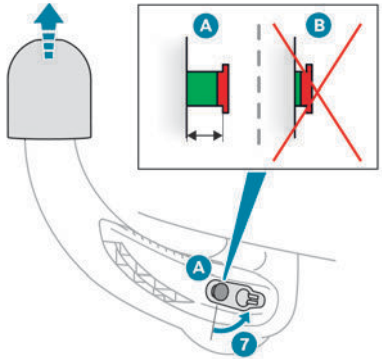
Fitting the towball



- ▶ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the carrier **1.**
- ▶ Check that the mechanism is unlocked (position B).
- ▶ Insert the end of the towball **5** into the carrier **1** and push it upwards; it will lock into position automatically.



▶ The handle **6** tilts upwards; take care to keep your hands clear!



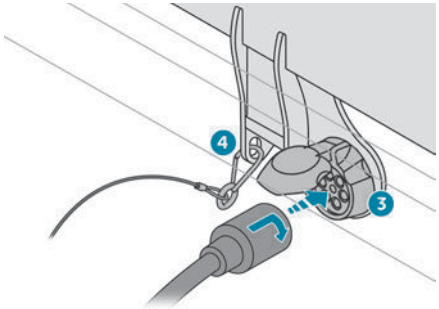
▶ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place (position A).

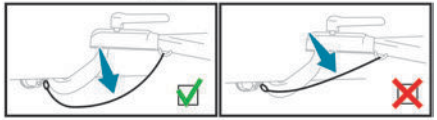
▶ Close the lock 8 using the key.

▶ Remove the key. The key cannot be removed while the lock is open.

▶ Clip the cap 7 onto the lock.

▶ Remove the protective cover from the towball.





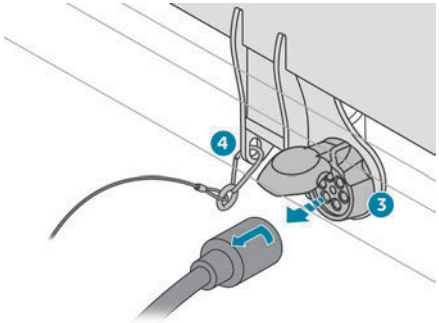
▶ Attach the trailer to the towball.

▶ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye 4 on the carrier.

▶ Lower the connection socket 3 to put it in position.

▶ Insert the trailer plug and rotate it by a quarter turn to connect it to the connection socket 3 on the carrier.

Removing the towball

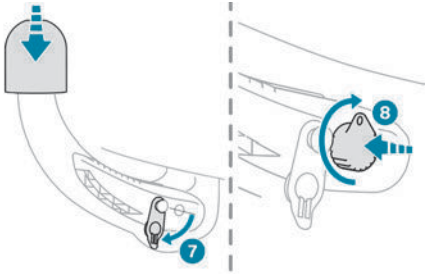


▶ Grasp the trailer's plug, perform a quarter turn and pull to disconnect it from the connection socket **3** on the carrier.

▶ Tilt the connection socket **3** to the top position to stow it away.

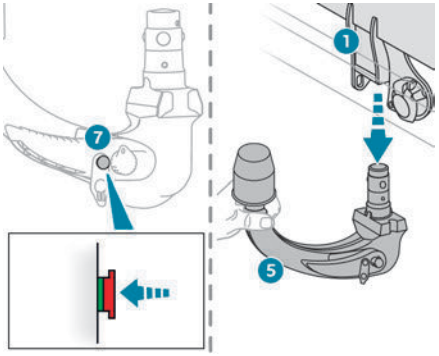
▶ Detach the trailer's safety cable from the safety eye 4 on the carrier.

▶ Unhitch the trailer from the towball.



▶ Replace the protective cover over the towball.

- ▶ Remove the cap **7** from the lock.
- ▶ Insert the key into the lock **8.**
- ▶ Open the lock using the key.

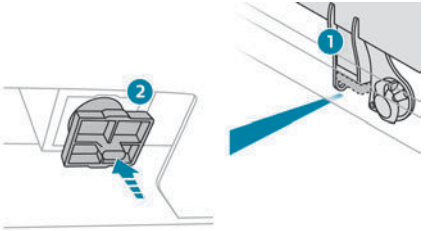


- ▶ Hold the towball 5 firmly in one hand; using the other hand, press and hold the pin 7; do not release the pin.

The handle 6 tilts downwards; take care to keep your hands clear!

Warning
Never use the foot to force the unlocking/ locking handle - risk of breakage!

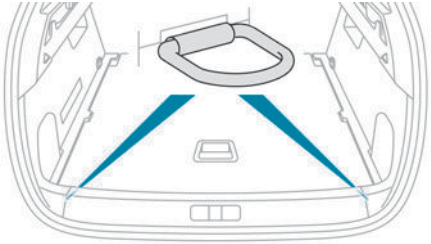
- ▶ Extract the towball from the base of its carrier **1.**
- ▶ Release the pin; it automatically locks in the unlocked position (position **B**).

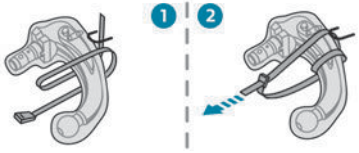


- ▶ Replace the protective plug **2** into the carrier **1.**
- ▶ Stow the towball in its bag to protect it from knocks and dirt.

Storage

This procedure should be considered for versions without dedicated storage in the boot.





The towball is attached to boot ring with strap. 2 strap loops are made around the towball and then put into the ring.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

Tip

Work on the towing device

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving tips

Driving recommendations

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

Warning
Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines

emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

Warning
In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

Warning
Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

Warning
Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves). The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

Warning
Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.

This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

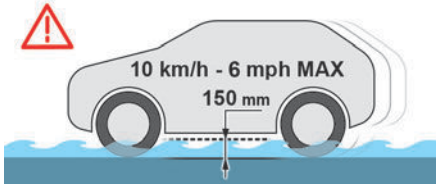
Warning
Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment that could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

Warning
Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox or drive selector into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on version).

Warning
Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



- Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (BEV)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When manoeuvring, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

Tip
Cooling the traction battery The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:
– Traction battery relay when starting.
– Vacuum pump when braking.
– Vehicle tires or aerodynamics when driving.
– Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

Warning
Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Tip
Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

Warning
New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Tip
If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are located as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted, without exceeding it.

Tires

▶ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

▶ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

Tip
If a genuine PEUGEOT towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

▶ Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.

▶ Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Very cold climate screens

(Depending on country of sale)
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.

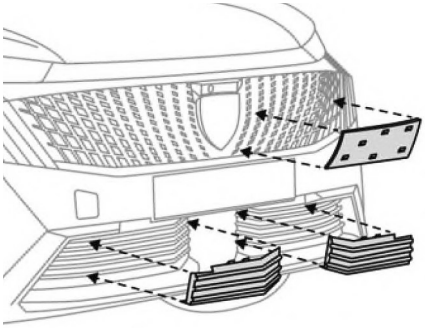
Tip
In case of difficulty with installation/ removal

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Warning
It is essential to remove them when:
– the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
– recovery is in progress.
– the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Fitting



For the lower screen

- ▶ Position the bottom of the lower screen from the third lower opening in the grille.
- ▶ Without pressing on the lower clips, turn the lower screen to position the 4 small upper clips under the horizontal bars.
- ▶ Press down on the side of the lower screen until a clicking sound is heard.
- ▶ Check that the assembly is firmly held by pressing around the edges.

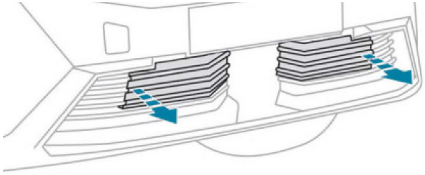
Repeat the same operations for the other lower screen.

> **Tip**
>
> **For electric versions**
>
> Use only two lower screens.

For the upper screen

- ▶ Position the first lower clip on the second grille opening to the right of the Brand logotype. ➔ Engage the 3 lower clips, starting with the one on the left.
- ▶ Without pressing on the lower clips, turn the upper screen so that the 3 upper clips fit into the straight openings under the horizontal bars.
- ▶ When the 6 clips are correctly positioned, press the upper screen down to secure it in the grille.
- ▶ Check that the assembly is firmly held by pressing around the edges.

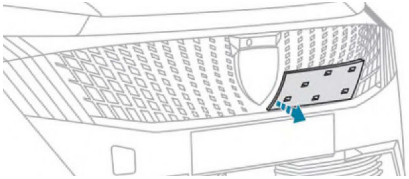
Removing



For the lower screen

- ▶ Insert a finger in the lower outside corner of the lower screen.
- ▶ Pull towards you to guide the unclipping of the assembly from outside to the inside.

Repeat the same operations for the other lower screen.



For the upper screen

(except for electric versions)

- ▶ Insert a finger in the lower inside corner of the upper screen.
- ▶ Pull towards you to guide the unclipping of the assembly from inside to the outside.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

> **Warning**
> Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.
> They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

> **Tip**
> Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Only use chains that have been designed to be fitted to the type of wheel on the vehicle:

Original tire size	Maximum link size
225/60 R18	9 mm
225/55 R19	9 mm
235/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R20	Polaire PSGB 140

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ▶ To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- ▶ Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ▶ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Tip
It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

Warning
Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Introduction To Assistance Systems

General Information

Tip
Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Tip

Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Tip

Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Information displayed Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

Warning

Radar(s)

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.

Warning

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Tip

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Warning

Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Tip

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Warning

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.

Tip

Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Detection Sensors

Radar

The vehicle is fitted with radars in each corner, contained within the bumpers. They provide distance and closing speed to the system and allow to detect incoming objects in front and behind the vehicle.

Warning

Radars

The operation of the radars, along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. Mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. Heavy rain, snow) by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated systems.

Ultrasonic Sensors

Ultrasonic sensors are fitted to the bumpers to detect obstacles at short range during parking maneuvers.

Warning

Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Steering wheel with hands-on detection

(with Drive Assist Plus 2.0)

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction on the part of the driver.
It is prohibited to cover or attach anything to the steering wheel.

Warning
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle and supervise the whole manoeuvre.
Any use of a system built into Drive Assist Plus 2.0 must remain under the driver's vigilance.

The system also detects the presence of hands when using the Lane Positioning assist system with Drive Assist Plus.

Tip
The system may suffer interference or not work correctly if:
– the steering wheel is covered by some protection.
– the driver wears thick gloves (e.g. ski gloves).
In the event of improper detection of hands on the steering wheel, Drive Assist Plus 2.0 is not activated or is deactivated after a few seconds.

Warning
Installation of mechanical anti-theft devices on the steering wheel is prohibited - risk of damage!

Shortcuts for driving aids

The full list of available driving aids can be found in the **Functions** tab.
Driving aids can be accessed directly to quickly activate/deactivate them.
By default, driving aids are already stored in the **Shortcuts** tab (e.g. Stop & Start, Lane keeping assist).
Other driving aids can be added or deleted from this tab.

It is configured in the **ADAS>Functions** touch screen application.

► Press the button corresponding to the driving assistance concerned:

• Full symbol: the function is added to the **Shortcuts** tab.
• Empty symbol: the function is deleted from the **Shortcuts** tab.

• Full symbol: the function is added to the **Shortcuts** tab.
• Empty symbol: the function is deleted from the **Shortcuts** tab.

► Check the modification in the **Shortcuts** tab.

► Press this button to access directly to the **Shortcuts** tab.

Multiple deactivation

Warning
Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the electric motor is ready.

It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously.

This is done in two steps:

- First of all, the selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
- Secondly, the simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

Selection of functions

▶ Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.

▶ Select the **Functions** tab.

▶ Press this button to display the list of available functions.

▶ Select the functions that will be deactivated by a long press on the **ADAS** button at each start (e.g. Stop&Start, Lane Keeping Assist, Automatic Braking System (Active Safety Brake).

▶ Press this button to return to the previous page.

The functions to deactivate are saved in the system.

Deactivation of these functions

▶ Press and hold this button on the cluster.

All previously selected functions are deactivated until the vehicle is next restarted (confirmed by an audible signal).

Speed Control Assistance System

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

Warning

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Tip

Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the pause signal will appear). To return to the speed setting, press SET+/SET-, the set speed will be equal to the current vehicle speed (when the set speed is reached again, the pause signal disappears).

Warning

Operating limits.

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a ‘space-saver’ type spare wheel.
- When using snow chains or non-slip covers.

Cruise Control

Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids and the Specific recommendations on cruise control.**

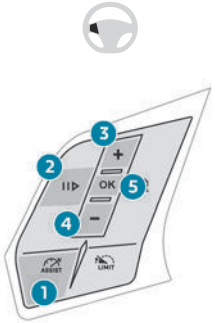
This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

Tip
Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

Tip
Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls



1. Cruise control selection
2. Switch on/Pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
4. Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
5. Activation of cruise control in progress Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Cruise control on (green)/Pause (grey) indication
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

- ▶ Press **1-ASSIST** to select the cruise control mode; the function is paused (grey).
- ▶ Press **3, 4** or press **5-OK** to activate the cruise control and save a speed setting as soon as the vehicle speed reaches the desired level (green).
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>** temporarily pauses the function.
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>**, **3, 4** or **5-OK** again will reactivate cruise control (green).

Tip
Cruise control operation is also temporarily interrupted (pause):
– by pressing the brake pedal.
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
– by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
– by using the electric parking brake.

Modifying the speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.
- ▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.

Warning
Prolonged pressing and holding on **3** or **4** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

Warning
As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

– When passing the sign:

- ▶ Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

– After passing the sign:

- ▶ Press **5-OK.** The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- ▶ Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Off

- ▶ Press **1**: the cruise control information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive Assist Plus

This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle, using Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function in conjunction with Lane positioning assist.
These two functions must be activated and in operation.
For more information on **Adaptive cruise control** and **Lane positioning assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Warning
The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking within the physical limits and capacities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles in the surroundings may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

Warning
Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Selecting/Deselecting the system

- ▶ Press this button successively until the Drive Assist Plus mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- ▶ After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed on the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbols, representing the steering wheel and the side lines, depends on the operating state of the system:

(grey) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange) System malfunction.

- ▶ Press this button successively again until the **OF**F mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- ▶ After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

Drive Assist Plus 2.0

This system automatically regulates the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle by combining the following functions:

- Drive Assist Plus with Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function and Lane positioning assist.
- Semi-automatic lane changing.
- Speed setting advance recommendation.

For more information on these functions, refer to the corresponding sections.
The availability of the system depends on the country you are driving in.
This system is only to be used on eligible motorways and main roads.

Selecting/Deselecting the system

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

- ▶ Select the **Functions** tab, then select/deselect **Drive Assist.**

The system's status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Specific recommendations on cruise control**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
With the **Stop function** (with the EAT6 automatic gearbox), the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
With the **Stop & Go function** (with the e-DCS6/7 automatic gearbox or drive selector), the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

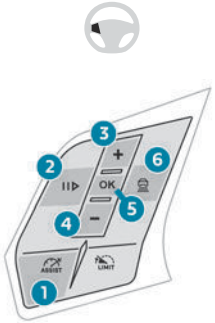
Warning
The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.
The system is not operational in the event of a brake lamp failure.

To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windscreen and a radar fitted in the front bumper.

Warning
Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Tip
If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

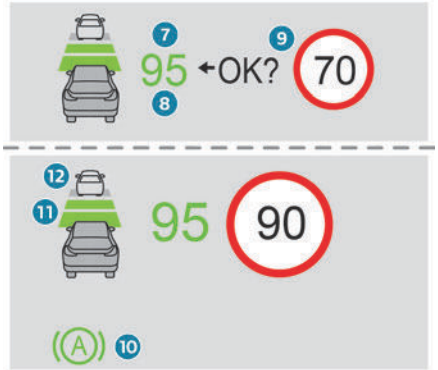
Steering-mounted controls



1. Selection/Deselection of cruise control only or Drive Assist Plus (depending on version)
2. Switch on/Pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (version with Stop & Go function)
3. Increase the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
4. Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
5. Activation of cruise control in progress Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
6. Display and configuration of the inter-vehicle distance setting

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



7. Cruise control activated (green)/paused (grey)
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
10. Vehicle held stationary (version with Stop&Go function)
11. Inter-vehicle distance setting
12. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Use

Selecting the system

▶ With the engine running, press successively on **1-ASSIST** until cruise control mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

▶ After a few seconds, cruise control mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed (grey) and cruise control is ready to be activated.

Switching on cruise control

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).
System activation is also subject to the following conditions:
– Driver's door closed.
– Driver's seat belt fastened.
– Mode **D** selected on the automatic gearbox.
– Parking brake released.
– If the vehicle is stationary, brake pedal depressed.
A message OK? is displayed if all activation conditions are met.

▶ Press **3, 4** or **5-OK**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

Modifying the speed setting

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.

▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.

Warning
Prolonged pressing and holding on **3** or **4** causes a rapid change in vehicle speed.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

– When passing the sign:

▶ Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

– After passing the sign:

▶ Press **5-OK**. The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.

▶ Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Pausing/Resumption of cruise control

▶ Press **2-II>** or depress the **brake pedal.**

The symbol "**II>**" is displayed if all activation conditions are met.
Cruise control may also have been paused:
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
– by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
– by using the electric parking brake.
– by unfastening the seat belt.
– by opening the driver's door.

▶ Press **2-II>** or **5-OK** to reactivate cruise control.

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press 2-II> or the accelerator pedal to move off.

Tip
Cruise control remains active following a gear change.

Warning
When cruise control is paused and the driver tries to reactivate it, the message "**Activation not possible, conditions not met**" is temporarily displayed if reactivation is impossible (required conditions not met).

Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

▶ Press **5-OK** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

Warning
If the selected speed is far from the current vehicle speed, a strong acceleration or deceleration is felt.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

▶ Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds (**"Distant", "Normal"** or **"Close"**), then make successive short presses to select a threshold.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.
The driver must keep a sufficient safety distance from the vehicle in front.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

▶ Depress the accelerator pedal. The system is suspended as long as the acceleration is maintained. When the accelerator pedal is released, the speed setting flashes while the current vehicle speed is above the speed setting.

Deselecting the system

▶ Press successively on **1-ASSIST** until **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

▶ After a few seconds, cruise control mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

Messages and alerts

Tip
The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.

Cruise control selected, but cannot be activated.
All the operating conditions have not been met.

(grey)

Cruise control selected, awaiting confirmation for activation.
All the operating conditions are met.

(grey)

Cruise control paused, but cannot be reactivated.
All the operating conditions have not been met.

(grey)/(grey)

Cruise control paused, awaiting confirmation for reactivation.
All the operating conditions are met.

(grey)/(grey)

Cruise control active, vehicle detected.

(green)/(green)

Cruise control suspended, following brief acceleration by the driver.

(orange)

"Take control"

▶ Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

(red)

"Take control"

▶ **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"Activation not possible, conditions not met"

The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function

(grey)/(green)

"Cruise paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: cruise control is paused.
The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Stop & Go function

(green)/
(green)

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.
Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate or press **2-II>** to move off.

Tip
If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

Warning
While the vehicle is immobilised, the following recommendations apply:
– The driver should not leave the vehicle.
– Do not open the boot.
– Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
– Do not engage reverse gear.

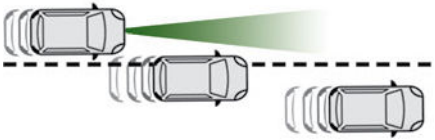
Warning
When restarting the vehicle, beware of cyclists, pedestrians or animals who are not taken into account by the system.
The driver must monitor their surroundings.

Operating limits

Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

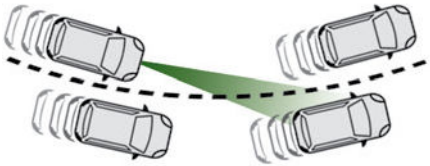
Cases not taken into account by the system:

– Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
– Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).



– Vehicles crossing your lane.
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations where the driver must suspend the system:

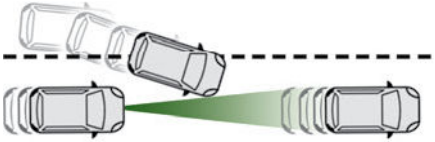


– Vehicles in a tight bend.
– When approaching a roundabout.

– When following a narrow vehicle.
Reactivate the system when conditions allow.

Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

– Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

Warning
Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

Warning
Pay particular attention:
– When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
– When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

Warning
If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper.
- If a brake lamp is not working.

Warning
If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Towing.
– Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).
– Obstructed radar and/or camera.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed (orange) instead of the speed setting.

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision avoidance assistance system

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Wrong Pedal Prevention (WPP)

Tip
For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS).**

This function shall prevent or reduce damages in case of a strong press on the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal if an obstacle is detected in front or behind the vehicle by performing emergency braking.
This function, operating at a standstill or moving at very low speed, uses the parking sensors for detection.

Operation

The function brakes if:

- While in Drive mode, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by front sensors.

or

- While in reverse gear, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by rear sensors.

Functionality

Function is signaled brake lights, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The emergency brake is stopped and the active state is left, if the brake pedal is pressed.
If the system is active and the driver does not press the brake pedal to deactivate the feature within 90s, Electronic park brake (EPB) is engaged automatically and the indication "**Parking Brake Applied**" is displayed.

The function can be deactivated in the ADAS touch screen application (selected again after ignition cycle).

Deselection by the driver of the WPP system is indicated by this indicator light on the instrument panel coming on and the display of a message.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating limits

The system may not operate in the following situations:

- Sensor covered in mud, dirt, ice, leaves from the road
- External coverage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors (e.g. stickers)
- Damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- New coating of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow or fog).
- Vehicle ahead creating massive air disturbances
- Heavily loaded trunk
- Very high slope
- Blocked parking sensors
- Very small or thin obstacles
- Extreme temperature changes
- Attached bicycle carrier or trailer
- Objects surfaces that reflects or absorbs ultrasonic waves

ATTENTION:

Caution

The system is not deactivated when trailer is attached, but does not react to obstacles behind the trailer. Depending on the trailer, the trailer could be detected as near object. A full acceleration in rear direction is not possible.

ATTENTION:

Caution

Any damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors should be repaired in a qualified workshop to preserve full performance.

Danger

Warning

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance and controls from the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings.
The driver is responsible for correct use of the brake and accelerator pedals, as well as the gear selector. Never intentionally attempt to drive toward an obstacle to test the system's function, as this is extremely dangerous.

Danger

Warning

The system can only work properly in its physical limits.

Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

Tip
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Warning

After an impact

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB)

If an accident is detected, the vehicle automatically initiates a post collision safety braking. The goal of this system is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react.
The system acts on frontal, lateral and rear collision.
The system is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the post collision safety braking is not available, as it can occur in destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios.
It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operating conditions

The system operates, if the following conditions are met:

- Airbags or pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision.
- Braking systems and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision.
- Driver has not depressed the accelerator pedal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, one of these warning lamps will come on fixed on the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp, the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (e.g. moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

The ASR system is deactivated/ re-activated in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Deactivation/reactivation of the ASR system is indicated by this indicator lamp on the instrument panel coming on/going out and the display of a message.

The ASR system is automatically reactivated every time the ignition is switched off or at speeds over 31 mph (50 km/h) Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
ASR/DSC. These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by PEUGEOT dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.
The vehicle speed must be between 60 and 160 km/h (37 and 99 mph).

If the system detects that the trailer is snaking, it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and reduces engine power, if necessary, to slow the vehicle (indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel and the brake lamps coming on).
For more information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine technical data and towed loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate.
To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

To continue towing a trailer, reduce speed and drive carefully! Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and current legislation in force in your country. It must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in unsuitable conditions of operation (e.g. excessive load, exceeded nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system) or driving at excessive speed.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Braking performance assistance system

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

Tip
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Warning

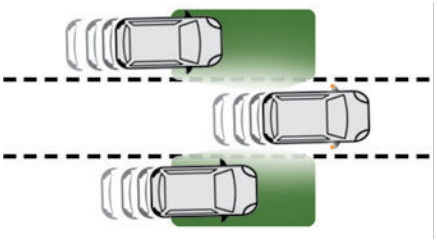
After an impact

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

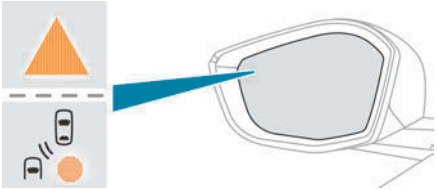
Blind Spots Monitoring (BSM)

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system warns the driver of vehicles approaching rapidly from the rear in adjacent lanes (up to around 75 m) and of the presence of a vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle, using corner radars located in the rear bumper.

Tip
This system takes into account vehicles such as cars, lorries and motorcycles by monitoring the blind spots or areas hidden from the driver's field of vision.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– **Fixed**, immediately when another vehicle is in the blind spot or is approaching in an adjacent lane.
– Flashing, after about 1 second when the direction indicator is used.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.

Tip
The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

Operating conditions

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 9 mph (15 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.

Operating limits

No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
- if the rear bumper is damaged.

Warning
It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Always check in the mirrors and look over your shoulders before changing lanes to avoid an accident.
In the event of repairing or repainting the rear bumper, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, hail or extreme temperature changes).
In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the radars are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the rear bumper, with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Passenger Side Camera

Automotive Night Vision

Lane Keeping Assistance System

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

Warning
Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation until the next time the ignition is reactivated.The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane.
The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.
Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.
No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.

When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator rapidly flashes yellow.

Operating conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.
or
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

Operation limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- shining sun directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

Malfunction

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audible warning system is in failure.
The system may be disturbed or unavailable.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Tip
The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

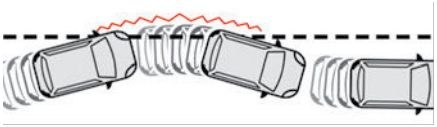
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Warning
Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation until the next time the ignition is reactivated.The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 65 and 180 km/h (40 and 112 mph).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

Warning
The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

Tip
The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Warning
The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing

correction for more than 10s. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.

Warning
Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g a trailer is attached.

Hands-Off Detection

When hands-off driving is detected during a correction within a rolling interval of 180 seconds, the system intervenes:

Intervention 1: flashes until te end of the intervention.
Intervention 2: flashes and a warning chime sounds until the end of intervention but for at least one second.
Further interventions: continuous flashing and the warning chime sounds 10 seconds longer than the previous chime.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: – Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). – No lane marking recognised. – ESC operation triggered. – Dynamic driving style.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
ON	**"Hold the steering wheel" or "Stay in lane"** (depending on version)	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
– ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
– Speed below 65 km/h (40 mph) or greater than 180 km/h (112 mph).
– Electrical connection to a trailer.
– Use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
– Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
– Driving over lane markings.
– Activation of the direction indicators.
– Crossing the inside line on a bend.
– Driving on a tight bend.
– Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.
– Narrow lane detected.

Warning
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
– Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
– Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
– Roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
– Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
– Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

Warning
The system must be deactivated if the vehicle is being towed.

Unavailability After Battery Reconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Malfunction

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audible warning system is in failure.
The system may be disturbed or unavailable.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

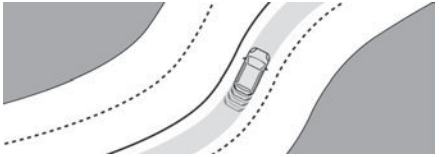
In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Tip
The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

Lane positioning assist (LPA)

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



The system identifies the edges of the traffic lane and steers the vehicle to keep it inside this lane and maintain the lateral position chosen by the driver.
To do this, the system uses a camera placed on the upper part of the windscreen.
This system is particularly suited to driving on motorways and main roads.

Activation/Deactivation

The Lane positioning assist system is automatically activated, after selecting the **Drive Assist Plus** mode.
For more information on the Drive Assist Plus system, refer to the corresponding section.
The selection is confirmed by the display of the symbols on the instrument panel, representing the steering wheel and the side lines.
The colour of the symbols depends on the operating state of the system:

(grey) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange) System malfunction.

If the driver no longer wishes to use the system for some time, they can deactivate it by pressing the **ASSIST** button again (confirmed by the Driving aids area disappearing from the instrument panel).

Tip
The system status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating conditions

- Adaptive cruise control active.
- ESC system operational.
- ASR system activated.
- No trailer detected.
- No 'space-saver' spare wheel in use.
- Vehicle not subject to strong lateral acceleration.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.

Regulation

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly.

When regulation is activated, the symbols are displayed in green: with small steering inputs, the system steers the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver in the traffic lane. This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.
The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.
At any time, the driver can change the position of the vehicle by intervening on the steering wheel and maintaining the position until the system has taken it into account. If the chosen position is too off-centre, an automatic re-centering manoeuvre can occur. The system adjusts to the newly defined position.

Pausing/suspending the system

Warning
The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any action on the brake pedal that causes the adaptive cruise control system to be paused will also cause the system to be paused.

Warning
If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.

Tip
If the function is suspended due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, the system must be reactivated by pressing the **ASSIST** button again.

Automatic suspension

Suspension of the system is accompanied by a specific audible signal.

- Triggering of the ESC system.
- Insufficient lane detection. In this case, the Lane keeping assist function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are met again.

Paused by the driver

- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (resulting in a pause until cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is depressed).
- Pausing of the adaptive cruise control system.
- Deactivation of the ASR system.

Driving situations and related alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Steering wheel-mounted controls	Symbols	Comments
ASSIST or I I>	(grey)/(grey)	Cruise control paused. Drive Assist Plus switched off.
ASSIST or OK	(green) /(green)	Cruise control on. Drive Assist Plus switched off.
ASSIST	(green)/(green)/(green)	Drive Assist Plus activated. Lane positioning assist operates normally (presence of steering wheel correction).
I I>	(grey)/(grey)/(grey)	Drive Assist Plus paused by the driver.
ASSIST or OK	(grey)/(green)/(green)	Drive Assist Plus on standby. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.
ASSIST or I I>	(grey)/(grey)/(grey)	Drive Assist Plus suspended. Cruise control and lane positioning assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel" (framed in blue)	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold steering wheel" (framed in orange)	Actual or imminent loss of lane positioning assist.

Messages	Driving situations
"Hold steering wheel" (framed in red)	Simultaneous loss of cruise control and lane positioning assist.

Operating limits

Tip
The system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling on a long, straight road with smooth road surface even if the driver thinks they are holding the steering wheel correctly.

The system may not operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:
– Wearing thick gloves (with Drive Assist Plus 2.0).
– Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
– Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
– Windscreen area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
– Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
– Travelling in a tight bend.
– Winding roads.
– Road surface repairs.

Risk of undesirable operation

Warning
The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When towing or with a bicycle carrier attached to a towing device, particularly when a trailer is not connected or the trailer is not an approved type.
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– In roadworks or toll booth areas.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the Service warning lamp comes on and this (orange) symbol appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Semi Automatic Lane Change (SALC)

(depending on version)

(with Drive Assist Plus 2.0)

Tip
For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system assists the driver in changing lanes. To do this, it uses the camera located at the top of the windshield, the radar located at the front and the four corner radars fitted in the bumpers.

Warning
The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction from the driver.
For more information on the **Hands-on detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance from the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings and keeping their hands on the steering wheel. The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation.
Any intervention on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal that causes the adaptive cruise control to be paused or suspended will also cause the system to deactivate.

Selecting the system

Depending on the context, the system is manually selected:

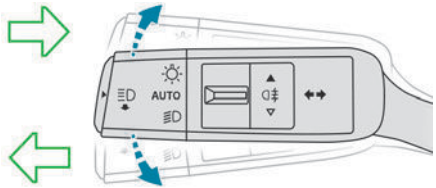
- ▶ Either when the vehicle is already driving on an eligible road, the driver selects the system by activating the Drive Assist Plus 2.0 system.
- ▶ Or when the driver is already using Drive Assist Plus, the vehicle suggests selecting the system upon arriving at an eligible road by pressing the **OK** button.

Or, depending on version:

- ▶ The system is automatically selected once the vehicle hac confirmed that it is moving in an eligible road.

To completely deselect the **Semi-automatic lane changing** system, refer to the **Drive Assist Plus 2.0** section.

Activation/Deactivation



► Activate the direction indicator on the side corresponding to the lane change, whether or not passing the resistance point of the lighting control stalk.

The driver can regain control of the vehicle at any time:

- by deactivating the direction indicator if the vehicle has not yet crossed the line.
- by firmly holding the steering wheel.
- by acting on the brake pedal.

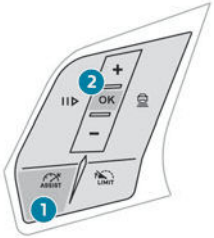
For more information on the **Direction indicators**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating conditions

- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- The line separating the lanes must be clear enough to be identified by the system.
- The position and speed of other vehicles must enable the system to safely change lanes.
- DS DRIVE ASSIST 2.0 activated.
- Lane positioning assist activated.
- Vehicle speed between 70 and 180 km/h (44 and 112 mph).

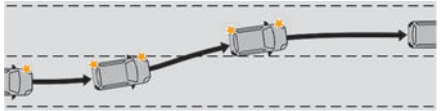
Authorised lane change request

When operating the direction indicator, if the necessary conditions are met, the message **"OK?"** is displayed on the instrument panel.



- After checking the surroundings, press **2-OK** to confirm the start of the lane change manoeuvre.

The message **"Stay attentive"** is displayed as a reminder that the driver is still responsible for the manoeuvre.

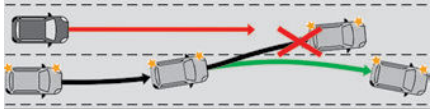


The system then proceeds with the vehicle's lane change.
Once the manoeuvre has been carried out, the system is automatically deactivated and the lane positioning assist takes over.
If the direction indicator has been set beyond the point of resistance, the driver must pull it back.

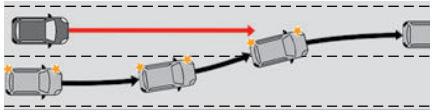
Tip
The driver must hold the steering wheel correctly.
As soon as the semi-automatic lane change begins, the system directs the vehicle to the target lane by small actions on the steering to position it in the destination lane.
You can feel the steering wheel moving.

Interrupting the lane change

It is possible that while changing lane, the necessary conditions for the operation of the system may no longer be met.



If this occurs before one of the wheels has crossed the line separating the two lanes, the system automatically returns the vehicle to its original lane (confirmed by the display of a manoeuvre cancellation message on the instrument panel and an audible signal). The system is then automatically deactivated.

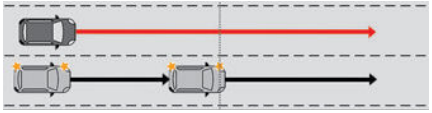


If this occurs when the lane change has started, the system prompts the driver to immediately retake control of the vehicle (confirmed by the display of a message on the instrument panel and an audible signal), and the system is automatically deactivated.

Refused lane change request

When operating the direction indicator or pressing **2-OK**, (depending on version) if the

necessary conditions are not met, the lines appear in orange on the instrument panel.



The system keeps the vehicle in the original lane. The system is deactivated and the semiautomatic lane change is not carried out.

Messages and alerts

Display	Comments
(grey)/(grey)/(grey)/(grey)	System awaiting selection.
(flashing grey)/(green)/(green)/(green) (blue)	System selection request.
(grey)/(green)/(green)/(green)	System selected.
"Stay attentive" (grey)/(green)/(green)/(green)	Confirmation request for a lane change manoeuvre.
(grey)/(green)/(green)/(green)	Lane change manoeuvre in progress.
(grey)/(orange)/(green)/(green)	Refused lane change manoeuvre when operating the direction indicator or pressing (**2**) **OK**.

Lane changing alerts

(orange)
" **Lane change interrupted: Stay in the lane** "
The system cannot manage the current driving situation.
Brake, accelerate or use the steering wheel, depending on the context.

(blue)
"Lane change cancelled "
Continuation of the systems: Lane positioning assist and Adaptive cruise control.
or
Interruption at the initiative of the driver.

(red)
" Take back control "
The system cannot manage the current driving situation.
Brake, accelerate or use the steering wheel, depending on the context.

Operating limits

Operating limits The system should only be used on driving lane.
The system may not work in the following situations:
– Wearing thick gloves.
– Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
– Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
– Windscreen area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
– Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
– Travelling in a tight bend.
– Winding roads.
– Road surface repairs.

Warning
The system must not be activated in the following situations:
– When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
– Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Road with low grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– Unusual configuration such as road works areas, toll areas and emergency lanes.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Warning
If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

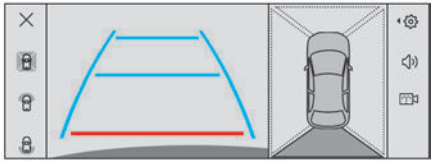
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

Surround Vision

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

This system allows you to view your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using cameras, located at the front and rear of the vehicle, as well as under the door mirrors.



The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menus, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Depending on the view angle chosen in the left-hand side menu, the system provides specific visual assistance in particular driving

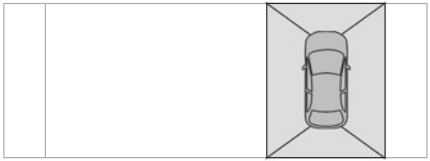
conditions, such as entering a blind intersection or manoeuvring in areas with reduced visibility.
Different contextual views are available for the rear or for the front:
– Automatic zoom view.
– Standard view.
– Panoramic view.
Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).
The view type can be changed at any time during the manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating principle

Reconstructed view

The cameras are activated and a reconstruction of a view from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is displayed on the touch screen.

Live view



The front, rear and side views automatically appear in the view from above the vehicle.
It is also possible to display any live view by selecting the corresponding zone.
The front view can be selected in forward gear up to 10 mph (16 km/h).

Tip
Installing the very cold climate screen can alter the image transmitted by the front camera.

Tip
An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

Settings

In the side menu:

This window allows to adjust the volume of the audible signal.

This button allows to mute/unmute the audible signal.

This button allows to trig the camera washing (depending on equipment).

Activation/Deactivation

Automatic

With the rear camera, engine running and vehicle stationary, rear vision is displayed automatically if reverse gear is engaged.
With the front camera, engine running and speed below 10 mph (16 km/h), rear vision is displayed automatically if a reverse gear is engaged.

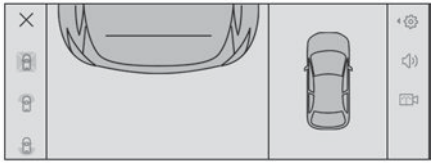
Manual

▶ In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Panoramic Camera**

The system is deactivated:

- automatically for the rear, when changing out of reverse gear.
- automatically for the front, above approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).
- by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Automatic zoom view

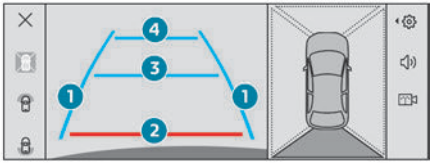


The front or rear camera records the surroundings during the manoeuvre to create a front or rear view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings, making it possible to manoeuvre the vehicle around the surrounding obstacles.
Using the sensors located on the front or rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at close distance during the manoeuvre.
This view is only available automatically.
Depending on version, it can be activated/deactivated in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

► Select **Functions>Panoramic camera**, and then its setting menu.

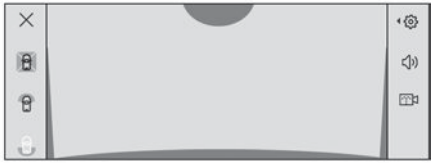
Tip
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view



Depending on the context, the area behind or in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear or front bumper; the two blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the left-hand side menu.

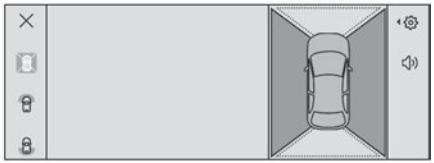
Panoramic view



The rear or front panoramic view allows you to leave a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is only available by selection in the left-hand side menu.

Side views

The left-hand/right-hand side view allows you to view the surroundings of each side of the vehicle (e.g. pavement, low wall, other vehicle parked next to it).

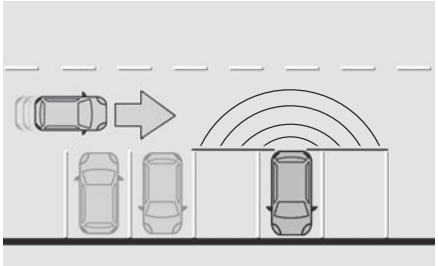


► Select the relevant view in the view from above the vehicle.

The outline of the selected area is displayed in solid lines and the side view appears in the middle of the screen.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

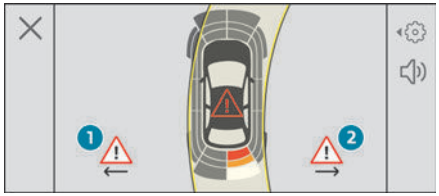
Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

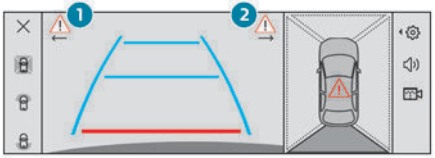


When engaging reverse gear or when reversing at up to 6 mph (10 km/h), with the engine running, this system warns of approaching obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, cyclist, vehicle, truck, motorcycle) in the rear blind spots of the vehicle, using the radars installed in the bumper.
The system detects obstacles moving more than 2 mph (3 km/h) at a maximum distance of 40 m.
The system operates in addition to the Parking sensors, Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 3 functions (depending on version).
For more information about the **Parking sensors**, **Visiopark 1** or **Visiopark 3** functions, refer to the corresponding sections.

Warning
The driver must monitor their surroundings before and during the whole manoeuvre.
Drive slowly and carefully in reverse gear in case of reduced or no visibility.

Operating principle





When an approaching obstacle is detected, the symbol **1** or **2** flashes on the touch screen, in the Parking sensors view or in the various contextual views of the Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 3 functions (depending on version).
The symbol is complemented by an audible signal when the vehicle is reversing.

An obstacle is approaching in the blind spot on the rear right-hand/ left-hand side or on both sides of the vehicle.
In the event of a malfunction of these visual display functions, the touch screen, or if the driver deactivates the views of these functions on the touch screen, detection of an approaching obstacle is still indicated by the audible signal when the vehicle is reversing.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

The system's status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating limits

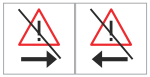
The system may not work in the following cases:

- Towing a trailer.
- Using a bicycle carrier on a towing device.
- Extreme temperature changes.
- Damaged rear bumper.
- Accumulation or projection of external elements (e.g. mud, frost, snow), stickers application.

Warning
It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Warning
In the event of repairing or repainting the rear bumper, consult the PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Malfunction


When the system is not available (manual deactivation, temporarily unavailability, sensors blocked, failure), these symbols are displayed permanently at the same time at the left and the right, as long as the conditions still fulfilled.
In the event of a malfunction when engaging reverse gear, during reversing or when the driver attempts to activate the system, a message appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
This message appears on the instrument panel **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the corner radars, the reversing camera and/or parking rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Multiple deactivation

It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously. This is done in two steps:

- First of all, the selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
- Secondly, the simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

Selection of functions

▶ Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.

▶ Select the **Functions** tab.

▶ Press this button to display the list of available functions.

▶ Select the functions that will be deactivated by a long press on the **ADAS** button at each start (e.g. Stop&Start, Lane Keeping Assist, Driver Attention Warning by Camera).

▶ Press this button to return to the previous page.

The functions to deactivate are saved in the system.

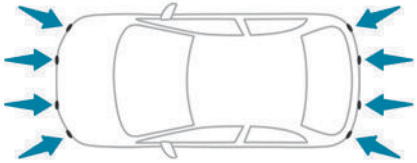
Deactivation of these functions

▶ Press and hold this button on the cluster.

All previously selected functions are deactivated until the vehicle is next restarted (confirmed by an audible signal).

Parking sensors

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

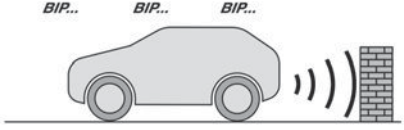
Rear parking sensors

System startup is available under the following conditions:
– when reverse gear is engaged.
– when the vehicle is moving backwards (e.g. downhill, in neutral).
It is indicated by an audible confirmation signal and a display indication.

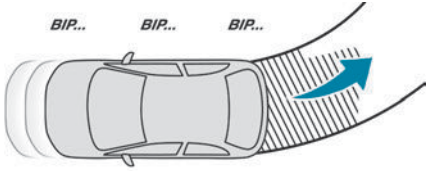
Tip
If an obstacle is detected as soon as the reverse gear is engaged, an audible detection signal is given directly instead of the audible confirmation signal.

If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Audible assistance



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.
The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
The audible signal is automatically suspended when the vehicle is stationary for a few seconds.
The audible signal is automatically restored when the vehicle is moving again or if the obstacle approaches the vehicle.

Tip

Adjusting the audible detection signal

Pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

Pressing this button mutes/unmutes the audible signal.
A message is displayed to indicate that the audible signal is temporarily muted.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the **"Danger"** symbol is displayed on the screen.

Tip

Closing the system display window

Pressing this button closes the system display window.

This warning lamp flashes during obstacle detection on the instrument panel.

Tip

Muting the audible assistance / Closing the visual assistance

If the audible detection signal is muted or the system display window is closed by the driver during the obstacle detection, only the warning lamp continues to flash on the instrument panel.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Tip
The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, whether in front of or behind it on its path.

Deactivation/Activation

(Depending on country of sale)
By default, the audible signal is automatically activated at each backing movement of the vehicle.

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated.

You can start the system manually in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Tip
The rear parking sensors are deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.

Tip
When starting the vehicle, the graphic and audible aids are only available after the touch screen has started up.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.
In case of a gearbox failure, the system is not active, when the reverse gear is engaged.

Malfunction

Tip
In case of display or speakers malfunction (e.g. frozen image, black screen), the system may be disturbed or unavailable.

Warning
In the event of vehicle malfunction that requires the vehicle to be stopped, the system may be deactivated.

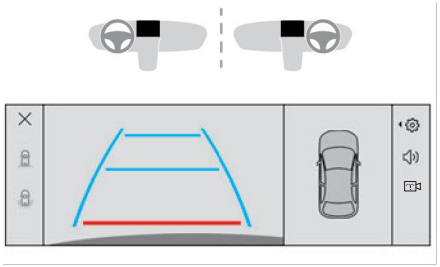
In the event of a temporary malfunction (e.g. untimely triggering due to external noise sources or other interferences), this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).
In the event of a permanent malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (long beep).
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front and/or rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

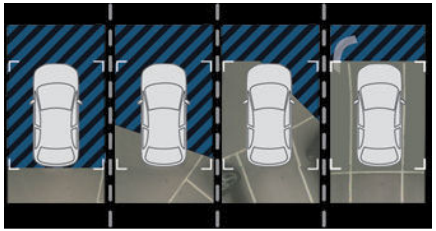
Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

When reverse gear is engaged, with the engine running, this system displays views of the vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menus, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Different contextual views are available:
– Automatic zoom view.
– Standard view.
– Panoramic view.
Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).
The view type can be changed at any time during the manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating principle



Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed manoeuvres.
An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.
This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles.
It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

Tip
An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

Settings

In the side menu:

This window allows to adjust the volume of the audible signal.

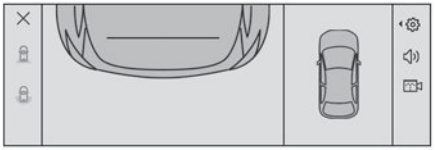
This button allows to mute/unmute the audible signal.

This button allows to trig the camera washing (depending on equipment).

Activation/Deactivation

To activate the camera, engage reverse gear.
The system is deactivated:
– when changing out of reverse gear and speed greater than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.
– by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Automatic zoom view

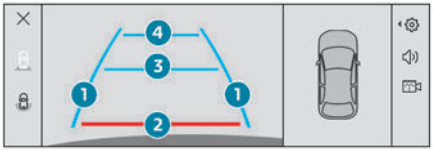


The rear camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its close surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
Using the sensors located on the rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at close distance during the manoeuvre.
This view is only available automatically.

Tip
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the side menu.

Panoramic view

The panoramic view allows you to leave, in reverse, a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is only available by selection in the side menu.

Driver's Attention Assistance System

Tip
For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** and **Detection Sensors**.

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings, and on analysing the face of the driver (depending on version).
The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Warning
These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver’s responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Activation or Deactivation

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

The system can be activated or deactivated on the Information Display via the vehicle settings.

May illuminate on the cluster when the system is deactivated.
To prevent undersirable operation, the system should be deactivated in the following situations :

- When a "space-saver" spare wheel is fitted.
- When the vehicle is towed.
- Driving on off-road.
- Driving on racing circuits.

Driver Attention Warning by timer

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol on the instrument panel simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h). The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.
The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

Tip
As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver drowsiness detection (DDD)

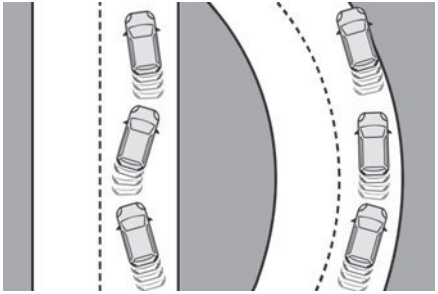
Depending on version the system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windshield
- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side next to the windshield facing the driver

Warning
To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

Driver Drowsiness Detection With Front View Camera

The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings. If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered.
The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h (40 mph).
The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given.



If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered.
In certain driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.

Additionally illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audio signal.

Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 13 mph (20 km/h).
The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements.
The system does not record any video nor is it capable to identify the driver.

The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- micro-sleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.

Additionally, illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audio signal. Drowsiness and micro-sleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialisation

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h (40 mph) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

Activation/deactivation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.
or
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

Fault

Illuminates on the cluster when a fault is detected, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.

Illuminates on the cluster when the audible warning system encounters a fault.
Consult a workshop.

Depending on the message, check that :

- The camera lenses are clean.
- The face monitoring camera is not disturbed by the driver wearing sunglasses.

If the fault cannot be cleared, consult a dealer or qualified workshop.

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

Active Emergency Stop Assist

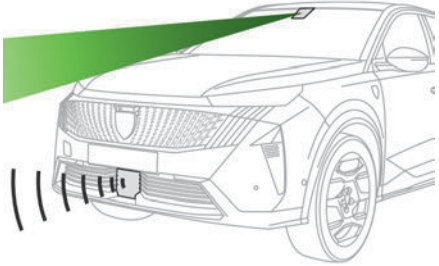
Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.

– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

Tip
The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

Warning
This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

Tip
As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit.
This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Brake system operational.
ASR system activated.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop.
In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the driving aids touch screen application is recommended, for instance:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Using an automatic car wash.
– Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
– Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Following a damage of the windscreen close to the detection camera.

Tip
The system is automatically deactivated if:
– A spare wheel with a too small diameter is detected.
– A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the right or left brake lamp is detected.
– A fault in the sensors, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
– A trailer is detected by the equipped vehicle hitch (with an electrical connection plug).
– A severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment) is detected.

The system performance may be degraded or not available by:
– Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt.
– Windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
– Damaged front bumper (or deformed in the past) or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
– Front camera out of regular position or missing cover.
– Brake discs cooling process is on-going.
– In curves.
– System initialization process after battery disconnection.
– Sun or lights shining into the front camera lens.
– Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. rain, fog or snow).
– Vehicle ahead creating road spray.
The system performance may be affected by:
– Vehicle stability system in progress.
– Vehicle battery voltage out of range.
– Wet road reflecting lights.
– Close vehicles ahead.

– Tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer.
– Banked roads.
– Winding or hilly roads.
– Poor lighting conditions.
– Sudden lighting changes.
– Vehicle modifications (e.g. tires).

Tip
In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

Warning
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

Warning
The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW and GTW limits and load height limits for roof bars).

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

The trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.

▶ In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Automatic Braking System.**

▶ Select one of the 3 preset thresholds: **"Far", "Medium"** or **"Near".**

The selected threshold is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel. The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)

Level 1: visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.
The message **"Vehicle close"** is displayed.

(red)

Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.
The message **"Brake!"** is displayed.

Level 3: a micro-braking may be given, confirming the risk of collision (optional).

Tip
While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert depends on the trigger threshold selected. It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

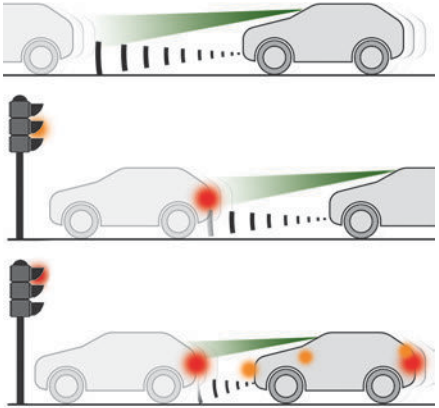
Warning
It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Warning
If you select "**Far**" in the touch screen, then the system warns sooner. This increases the safety but increases also the amount of alerts, if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the alert occurrence, you can change the setting to either of the other two.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (IEBA)

This function increases vehicle deceleration if the driver does not brake enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

Tip
Below a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h), automatic emergency braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop.
Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 30 mph (50 km/h) speed.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:
– The vehicle's speed is between 5 mph and 50 mph (8 km/h and 80 km/h) when a pedestrian, cyclist, or motorcyclist is detected.
– The vehicle's speed is between 5 mph and 50 mph (8 km/h and 80 km/h), when a stationary vehicle or motorcyclist is detected.
– The vehicle's speed is between 5 mph and 87 mph (8 km/h and 140 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

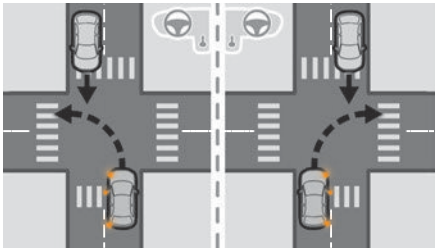
Tip
The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by strongly turning the steering wheel (evasive manoeuver) and/or by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Tip
The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Turning scenarios

Crossing road with another vehicle

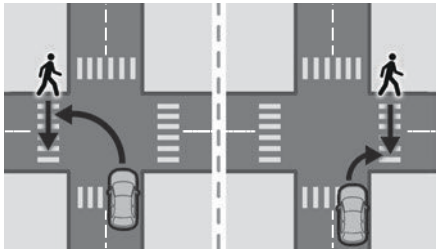


The system may operate when the vehicle is turning and detects another vehicle, on the adjacent lane, approaching from the opposite direction if:

- The corresponding direction indicator is activated.
- Then the vehicle is about to cross the path of another vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 15 mph (8 and 25 km/h).
- A collision on the side of the other vehicle is probable.

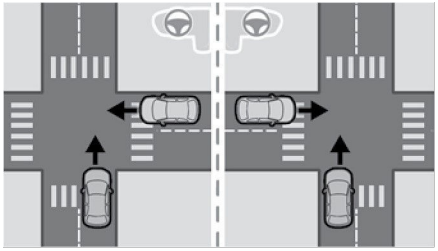
The system also takes into account motorcyclists and may react accordingly.

Crossing road with a pedestrian



The system may operate when the vehicle is turning left or right and detects a crossing pedestrian if:
– The pedestrian is crossing in front of the vehicle.
– The pedestrian can clearly be detected by the sensors.
– The scenery is detectable by the sensors (e.g. brightness, contrast vs background).
– The vehicle speed is between 5 and 15 mph (8 and 25 km/h).
The system also takes into account cyclists and may react accordingly.

Vehicle crossing the path



The system may operate when a visible vehicle is crossing your path and if:

- The visible vehicle is crossing your path and can clearly be detected by the sensors.
- The visible vehicle speed is below 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is below 40 mph (65 km/h).

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every ignition cycle.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated above 10 km/h.

Malfunction

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audible warning system is in failure.

The system may be disturbed or unavailable.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

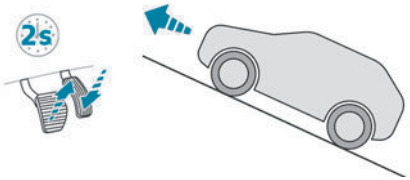
This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

Warning
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

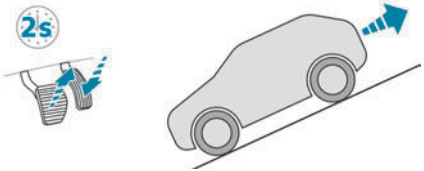
Warning
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

– If mode **D**, **M** or **B** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
– If mode **D** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction

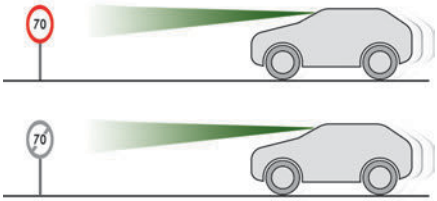
If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:

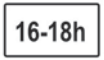
- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the on-board navigation system's mapping.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	**Without PEUGEOT i-Connect Advanced** 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel) **With PEUGEOT i-Connect Advanced** Display of the speed in force in the country you are driving in.

– Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times of the day Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

Tip
To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.
This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

Warning
On-board navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

Warning
The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.
Country selection is only available for audio systems without on-board navigation.

Warning
Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that are conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Tip
Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Information displayed on the instrument panel

1. Detected speed limit indication
2. End of speed limit indication

The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audible signal.

Tip
This audible signal is emitted if the Speed limit change sound is activated previously in the **Road Signs** function of the **ADAS** touch screen application.

For a suggested maximum speed, when the vehicle exceeds it, the speed is displayed and flashes for several seconds.

If the vehicle continues to exceed it, the speed is displayed and flashes for a few more seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tire repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– Non-standard road signs.
– Road signs that are obstructed, damaged or bent.

Settings

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.

You can activate/deactivate the overspeed alert and the speed limit change sound.

or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

Tip
The system cannot be deactivated.The state of speed limit change is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Malfunction

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audible warning system is in failure.

The system may be disturbed or unavailable. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Speed setting recommendations

The driver can select the speed displayed by the **Road signs recognition** system as the speed setting for the speed limiter, cruise control or adaptive cruise control using the **OK** button.
If rain is detected, the system proposes a speed setting to the driver which is lower than the speed read/sent from the mapping system in order to adapt to the weather conditions (e.g. on motorways, the proposed speed is 68 mph (110 km/h) instead of 81 mph (130 km/h).

> **Tip**
> For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

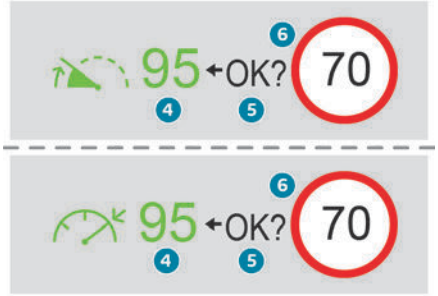
Speed setting advance recommendations

With Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated, the system detects the next speed limit sign, displays it in the background and proposes this new speed as the speed setting.
Once memorised:
– If the speed setting is lower than the previous one, the vehicle slows down to reach this new speed when it gets to the sign.
– If the speed setting is higher than the previous one, the vehicle speeds up to reach this new speed when it passes the sign.

Steering-mounted controls

1. Select speed limiter mode
2. Select cruise control mode
3. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Without speed setting advance recommendation

With speed setting advance recommendation

4. Current speed setting
5. Speed memorisation prompt
6. Current speed limit indication
7. Next speed limit indication

Operating conditions

- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated.
- Vehicle speed between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).
- Steering wheel properly held by the driver.

Memorising the speed setting

- Switch on the speed limiter **1-LIMIT** or cruise control **2.**

Information related to the speed limiter or cruise control is displayed.
When a new speed setting is detected, the system displays the value and **"OK?"** to suggest saving it as a new speed setting.

Tip
If there is a difference of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the **"OK?"** symbol is not displayed.

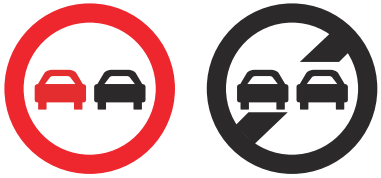
Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

- Press **3-OK** to confirm the new speed setting.

The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.

As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

Warning
The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

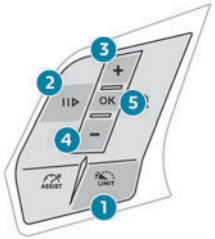
Speed limiter

Warning
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

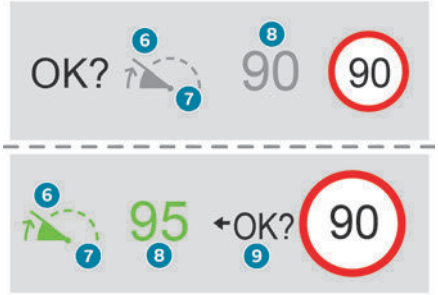
Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter selection
2. Switch on/Pause the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Decrease the speed setting
5. Activate the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Speed limiter on (green)/Pause (grey) indication
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

- ▶ Press **1-LIMIT** to select the speed limiter mode; the function is paused (grey).
- ▶ If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press **2-II>** or **5-OK** to switch the speed limiter on (green).
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>** again temporarily pauses the function.

> **Tip**
> When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or on **4** to decrease.
- ▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or on **4** to decrease.

When the function is activated, the limit speed value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

– When passing the sign:

- ▶ Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

– After passing the sign:

- ▶ Press **5-OK**. The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- ▶ Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

- ▶ Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

> **Warning**
> On a steep descent or in the event of 6 sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
> If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Off

- ▶ Press **1-LIMIT**: the speed limiter information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which**

must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed. It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

Warning
The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding
- lengthens braking distances
- causes premature wear of the tyres
- increases energy consumption

Tip
The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning

Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Tip

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Warning
The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tires when cold.
- If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

Warning
Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a dynamic driving style.

Tip
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

Warning
Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application.

- Then select **Safety > Tire Pressure Setup**.
- Press **YES** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tire under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip

Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Hazard Warning Lights

Activating Hazard Warning Lights

- Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist And SOS

Making an emergency call

1. eCall (SOS)
2. ASSISTANCE

SOS Call Feature

eCall (SOS) Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button 1.
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.
The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

▶ To make an emergency call manually, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*[2].

The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**[3].

▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

Warning
In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

Tip
The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free of charge.

Operation of the system

- Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up for a few seconds and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- The indicator lamp flashes red: emergency battery is flat. This will be recharged after a few minutes' driving.
- The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
- If the indicator lamp does not light up when the ignition is turned on, this is also a system malfunction.

2 In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
3 Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Tip
The malfunction of the system does not prevent the vehicle from driving.

Tip
When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

Tip

Data processing

All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.
The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number.
The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

Tip

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Tip

Access to data

You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

ASSISTANCE

- ▶ If the vehicle breaks down, press button 2 for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*[4]).
- ▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Tip
Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and PEUGEOT.
It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen application.

[4] Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Tip
If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

Tip
For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

Warning
During an update to the vehicle's on-board telematics system, the ASSISTANCE system will be unavailable.

Tip
If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Warning triangle

Warning Triangle Kit

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

Warning

Before getting out of the vehicle

Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Storage

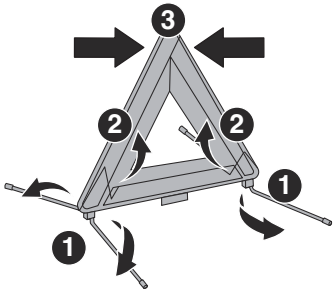
There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.

► After opening the tailgate, release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn to the left.

Hatchback

A compartment is provided in the storage box, located under the boot carpet.

Assembling The Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

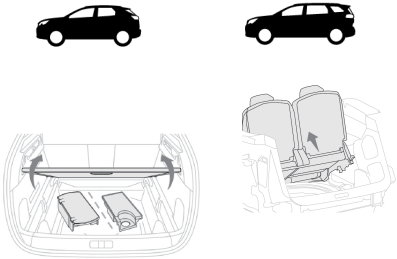
Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

Warning
These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.

Do not use them for any other purpose.

Accessing the tool kit



The tool kit is stored in the boot, under the floor.

To access it: Versions with 2-position boot floor:

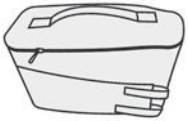
- ► Open the boot.
- ► Lift the boot floor past the two retractable stops.
- ► Place the boot floor onto these two stops to hold it up.

Versions with with articulated boot mat (PHEV OR BEV)

- ► Open the boot.
- ► Unfold the articulated boot mat by pulling its handle until it is fully opened.

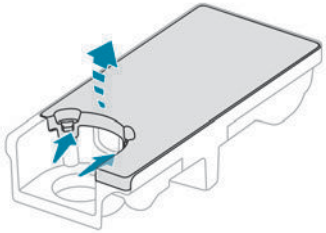
With temporary puncture repair kit

Model with storage bag



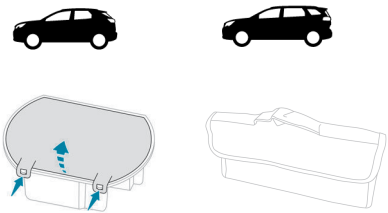
- ► Take the storage bag from the boot, then open the zip.

Model with storage box



- ► Unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

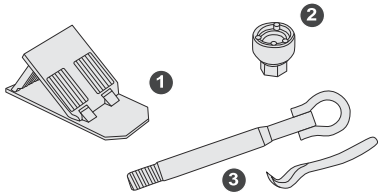
With spare wheel



- ► Unclip the storage box by pulling it upwards.
- ► Unclip the two fixings to open its cover.
- ► Take the storage bag from the boot, then open it by pulling the Velcro fasteners.

Warning
The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE, and also complies with UKCA requirement, as defined by the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 No.1597.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

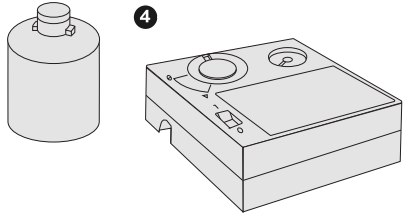
List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)
   To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

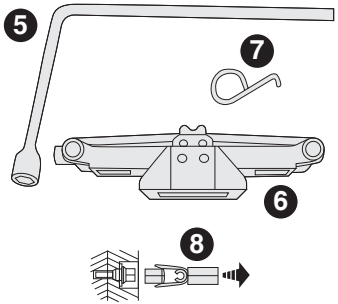
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
   To remove the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
   To raise the vehicle.
7. For removing the central bolt cover from alloy wheels.
8. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)
   To remove the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

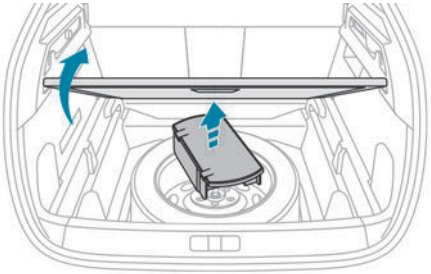
For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare Wheel

> **Tip**
> Scan the QR code on page 1 to view explanatory videos.

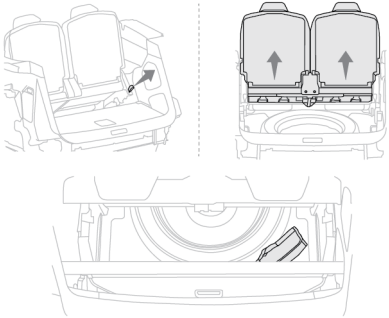
> **Tip**
> For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Accessing the spare wheel



The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.
To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

> **Tip**
> Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel, non-standard or 'space-saver' wheel.

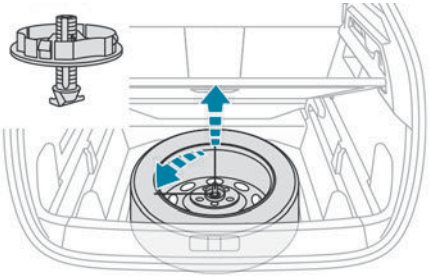


Warning
To access the spare wheel, it is imperative to tilt the backrests of row 3 seats before lifting the row.

From the trunk, pull the side straps to unlock the bench and lift seats to access the spare wheel.

Warning
Position of row 3 seats while accessing the tools is temporary. Make sure to reposition the seats before driving.

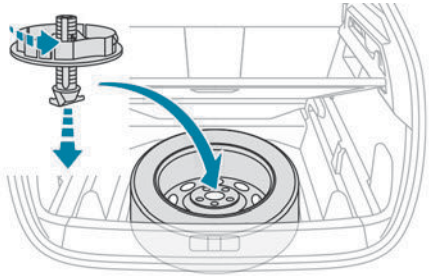
Removing the spare wheel



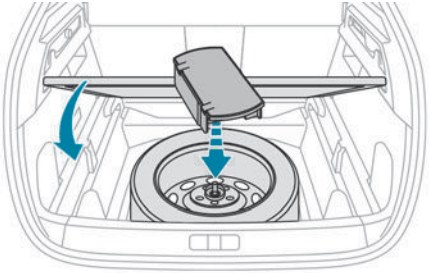
- Slacken the central nut.
- Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.

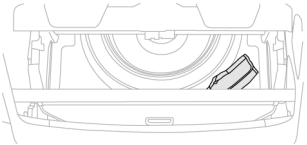
Putting the spare wheel back in place

Warning
The punctured wheel cannot be put under the boot floor.



- Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.





- Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- Put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Wheel Removal

Warning

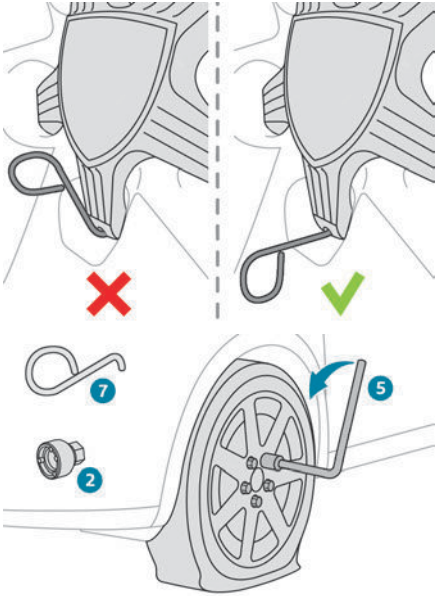
Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With an automatic gearbox, select mode P to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, specially for electric vehicles.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Tip

Wheel with wheel trim

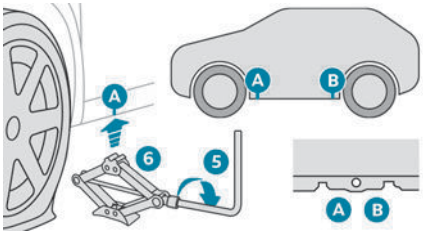
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling with both hands on one of the upper arms.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



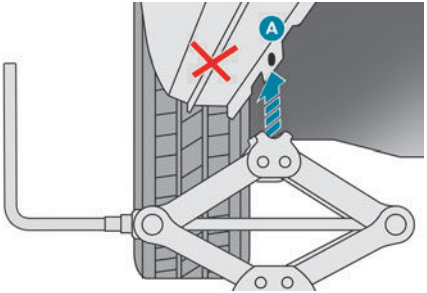
– If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim.
– If the vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the central bolt cover using tool **7.**
– If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **2** to wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
– Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

Warning
Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.

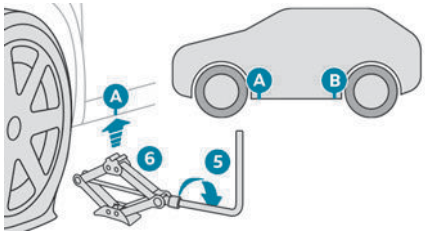
For ICE, Hybrid 48 V and PHEV versions



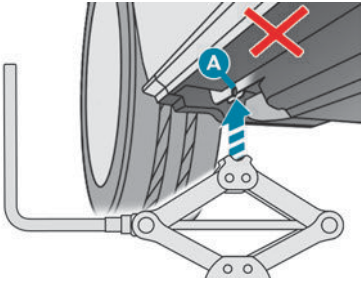
- Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



For electric versions

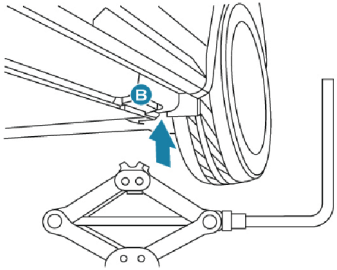


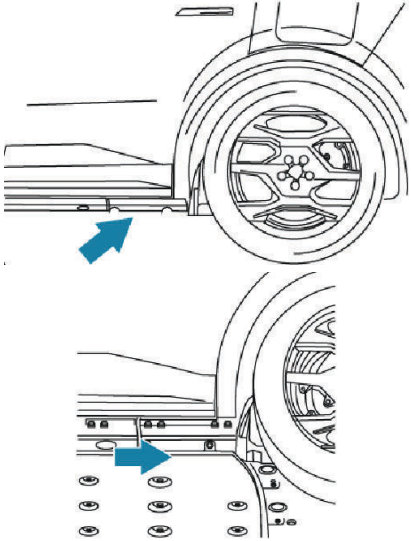
- For front wheel to be changed, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** jacking point on the underbody.



Tip
For high range electric versions, it is normal to observe that the flexible cover is pushed by the jack when it is deployed in the front **A** jacking point.

- For rear wheel to be changed, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the rear **B** jacking point on the traction battery mounting rail.

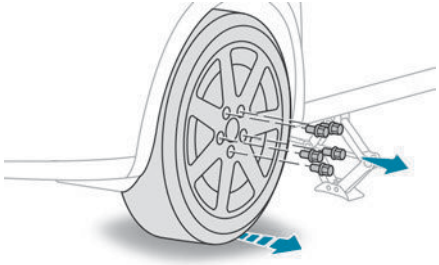




Then for all versions

- Extend jack **6** using the wheelbrace 5, until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

Warning
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury! Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



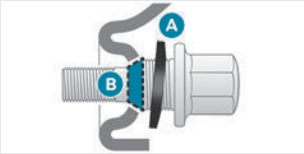
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

Wheel installation

Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

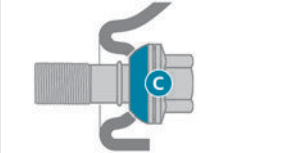
Tip

For petrol and hybrid versions

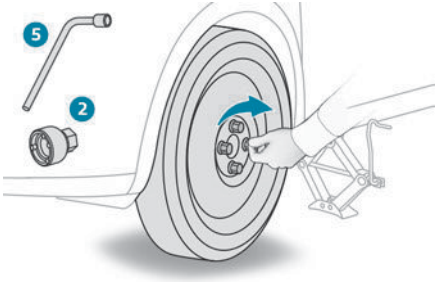


If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

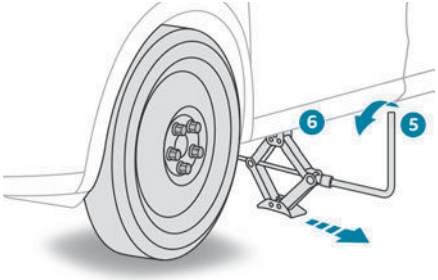
For rechargeable hybrid and electric versions



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the wheel is held in place by the spherical contact surface **C** of each bolt.



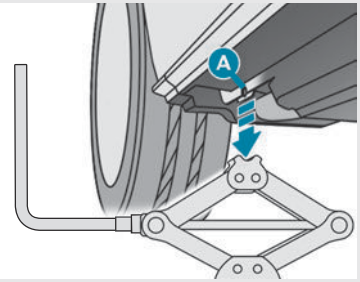
- Fit the wheel on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

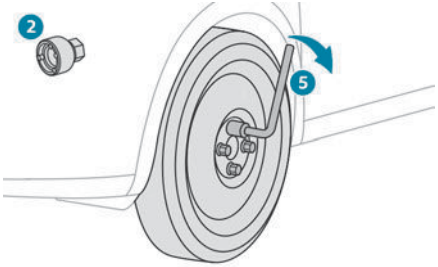


- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **6** and remove it.

Tip

For high range electric versions, check that the flexible cover is back in place when the jack is folded back to the front **A** jacking point; if not, replace it manually.





- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- Store the tools.

After Wheel Changing

The damaged wheel can not be stored in place of the spare wheel.

Warning
With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

Deactivate certain driving aid functions (active safety brake, adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

Warning
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Tyre Repair Kit

Tire Repair Toolkit

Tip
Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.

Tip
The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

Warning
Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

Tip
For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

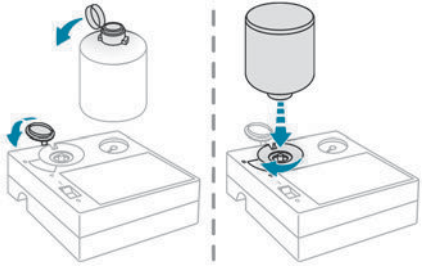
Tip
Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
For more information on **Identification markings,** particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tire Repair Procedure

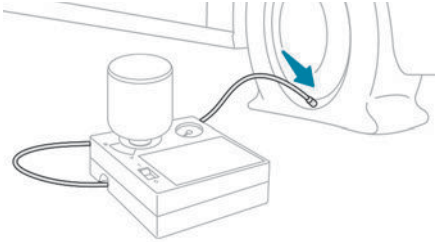
Warning
Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tyre.

- Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- Switch the ignition off.



- Remove the transparent cap from the bottle of sealant.

- Lift the protective cover before installing the bottle of sealant on the compressor.
- Turn the bottle of sealant over and screw it a quarter turn into the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the tire to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.

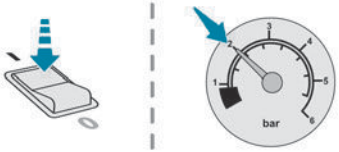


- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tire to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position **"O"**.
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

- Affix the speed limit sticker.

Warning
The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

- Switch the ignition on.

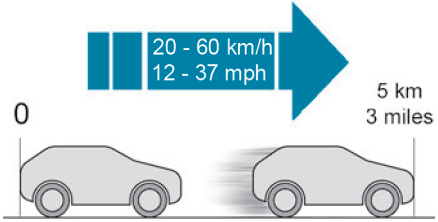


- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position **"I"** until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

Warning
If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Move the switch to position **"O".**
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Remove the kit.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

Warning
The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair **and the tire pressure** using the kit:

• If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a dealer to have the tire changed.
• If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

Warning
With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking - Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position **"O".**
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ▶ Switch the ignition on.
- ▶ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position **"I"** and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

Warning
If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position **"O".**
- ▶ Remove the kit and stow it.
- ▶ Refit the cap on the valve.

Jump Starting

Do not start with quick charger.
A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Lead-acid 12 V battery

Restriction
These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed at authorized dealer/ battery shop in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Warning
If the battery fails(after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at http:// public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Warning
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Caution

Electronic control units/LED technology headlights

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlights.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlights!
Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

Warning

Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Warning

Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Electric vehicles

Tip

Flat 12 V battery

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

Warning

Precautions before working on the accessory battery

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

Warning

Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the 12 V battery to jumpstart another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Symbols

No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.

Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.

Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.

The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.

For more information, refer to the handbook.

Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Connecting an external 12V power supply

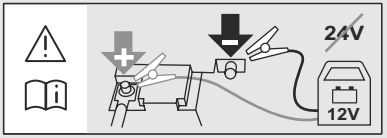
Warning
Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

Warning
Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

Warning
Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V at 40 A (approx 600 W)
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

Warning
Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

Warning
If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Tip
It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

Warning

Electronic control units/LED technology headlights

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlights.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlights !
Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

Warning

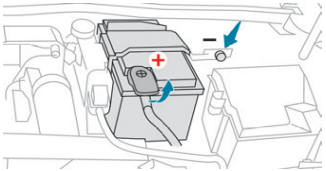
Precautions before working on the accessory battery

Select mode P, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

Tip
If the 12V battery is completely discharged, the electric door locks will not function and prevent access to the hood release lever.
Refer to **Keys- Central locking not functioning** for more information.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the hood.
Refer to the **Engine compartment - Opening the Hood** section.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- **(+)** Positive terminal
- **(-)** Negative terminal

Connecting the external power source

▶ Switch the ignition off.

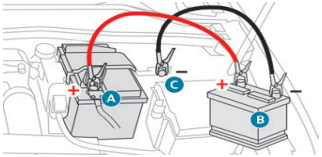
▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

Warning
Depending on the power source :

▶ Make sure the generator is switched off before connecting the cables.

▶ Make sure the donor vehicle is switched off and not in contact with the receiving vehicle.

▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.



▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

▶ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.

▶ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

▶ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C.**

▶ Switch on the generator or start the donor vehicle.

Disconnecting the external power source

Proceed in reverse order to disconnect the external power source.

ICE VERSIONS

On ICE versions, recharging the 12V allows starting the engine.

▶ Connect the external power source.

▶ After several minutes, start the vehicle.

▶ Let the engine idle for several minutes.

▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):

  ▶ Electronic key.

  ▶ Sunroof.

  ▶ Electric windows.

  ▶ Date and time.

  ▶ Preset radio stations.

▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

Tip
The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilized, the duration of which

depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Hybrid 48 V versions

On Hybrid 48 V versions, recharging the 12V battery allows starting of the engine and charging the 48V traction battery via the DC-DC converter:

- ▶ Connect the external power source.
- ▶ After several minutes, start the vehicle.
- ▶ Let the engine idle for several minutes.
- ▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):
  - ▶ Electronic key.
  - ▶ Sunroof.
  - ▶ Electric windows.
  - ▶ Date and time.
  - ▶ Preset radio stations.
- ▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

Tip
The hybrid system starts the vehicle, but a 12 V supply is required. There are several reasons why the vehicle cannot be started.

Warning
Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. e-Auto mode).

Warning
Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly.

The hybrid system is connected to the 12V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behavior of the system.

Warning
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

PHEV, BEV vehicles

If the 12V battery becomes flat, it becomes impossible to start or charge the vehicle.
For PHEV, the ICE cannot be started via the 12V battery.
To re-enable charging of the vehicle:

- ▶ Connect the external power source.
- ▶ Turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute to let the electronic system reinitialize.
- ▶ If required, charge the traction battery via the Onboard Charger.
- ▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):
  - ▶ Electronic key.
  - ▶ Sunroof.
  - ▶ Electric windows.
  - ▶ Date and time.
  - ▶ Preset radio stations.
- ▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

Warning
Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Charging Another Vehicle

Procedure for charging another vehicle is identical to the procedure of **"Jump Starting"**, under the point of view of the supplying vehicle.

Warning
Ensure the flat vehicle can be jump started (i.e. it is not a BEV vehicle)

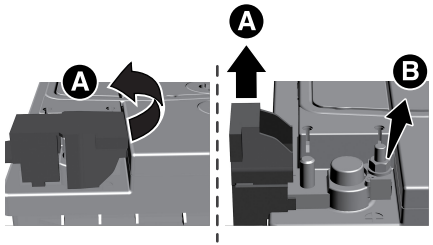
Warning
Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

Warning
Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

Battery Clamp

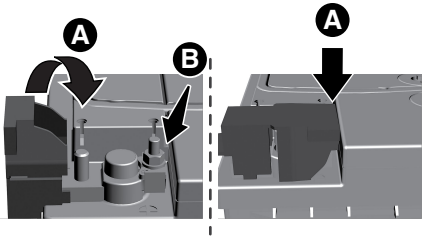
To avoid discharging the battery in case of long term storage, disconnecting the 12V battery may be necessary.

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Lift the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
- ▶ Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to unscrew the nut **B** and detach the plastic cover.
- ▶ Remove the plastic cover **A** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Refit the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
- ▶ Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to screw the nut **B** back.
- ▶ Close the plastic cover **A** to cover the terminals.

Warning
Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Tip
The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Tip
After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Event Data Recorder

(Depending on Country of sale)
This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).
This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.
In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened)
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver
- The speed of the vehicle
- The status of some driving and manoeuvring aids systems

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event

The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:

- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH (www.BoschCDRTool.com)

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

Very Cold Climate Covers

(Depending on country of sale)
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.

Tip

In case of difficulty with installation/ removal

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Warning
It is essential to remove them when:
– the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
– recovery is in progress.
– the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Scheduled Servicing

Heavy Usage Of The Vehicle

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Warning
Take care when working under the hood, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Warning
Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Restriction
Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine coolant

For ICE, Hybrid 48 V or PHEV versions

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Warning
For electric versions

Do not top up the coolant.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a dealer.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Engine Oil

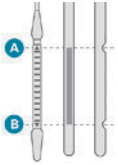
The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Warning
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



- Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min).**

Do not start the engine if the level is:

– above mark **A**: contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Warning
Oil grade

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

Warning
Never remove the oil filler cap with the engine running. Risk of burns and splashes inside the engine compartment.

- Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- Top up the level if necessary.
- After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick back into its tube up to the stop.

Warning
The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

Tip
The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Washer Fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Warning
Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Brake and Clutch Fluids

The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

Warning
Clean the cap before removing it to refill.
Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

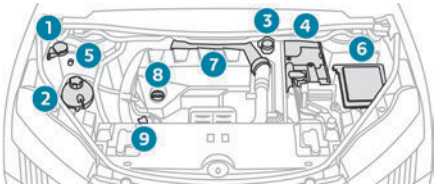
Antifreeze coolant

Engine Compartment

Access to engine compartment

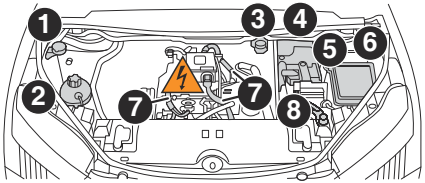
The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

Electric engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. 400 V electrical circuit
8. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Vehicle Maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

Special position of the windscreen wipers

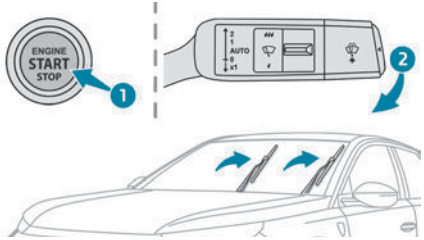
This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

Warning
Never attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

Tip
To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Before removing a windscreen



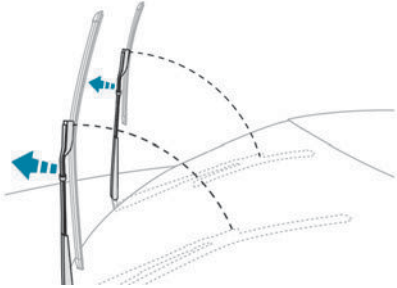
Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Removing/refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

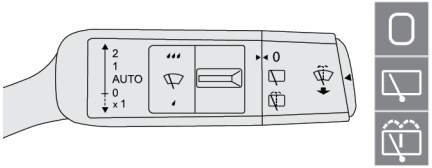
Warning
Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

Tip
Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- Disconnect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm from the filler neck of the worn wiper blade.
- Rotate the worn wiper blade to the stop in relation to the arm axle.
- Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
- Connect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm to the filler neck of the new wiper blade; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
- Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

If the ignition has been switched off with the rear wiper active, operate the ring to reactivate wiping when the ignition is switched on again (unless the ignition was off for less than 1 minute).
The first rotation of the ring to the screenwash position triggers a single wipe. If the ring is then left in the intermittent wiping position, the rear wiper adopts a wiping speed dependent on that of the windscreen wipers and the speed of the vehicle.

Reverse

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.Off

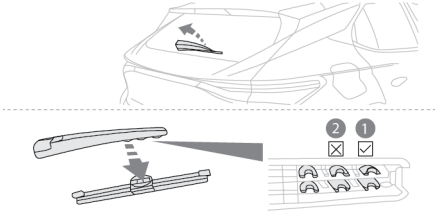
In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing system, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Rear screenwash

- Turn the ring as far as it will go and hold it in position.

The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned. A final wiping cycle is performed when screen washing ends. An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

Removing/refitting at the rear



- Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- Identify the position of the arm on which the wiper blade is attached.
- Unclip the worn wiper blade by pulling it towards the rear screen and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade in the same position of the arm and clip it into position.
- Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Warning
Take care not to use an incorrect position during fitting - risk of damage!

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

Tip
For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning
Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cabin Air Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Tip
A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Engine Oil Filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving)**, change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Automatic Transmission

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services. Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Tip
After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tip
For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Shock absorbers

It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.

For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits

The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

Fuses

Warning

Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Tip

Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning
PEUGEOT accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting

from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Light Replacement

Tip
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Warning
The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
- Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
– LED technology headlamps.
– Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps.
– Offset daytime running lamps/sidelamps/ direction indicators.
– Direction indicator side repeaters.
– Side spotlamps.
– 3D rear lamps.
– LED technology rear lamps.
– Brake lamps.
– Third brake lamp.
– Number plate lamps.

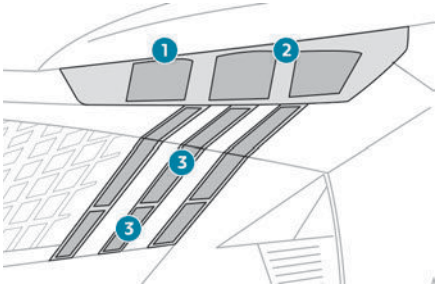
Warning

Replacement of this type of bulb

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch LED or Full LED technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

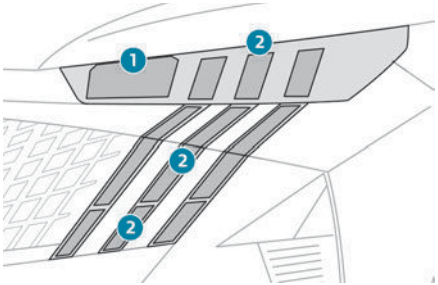
Front Lights

Model with LED technology headlamps



1. Main beam headlamps
2. Dipped beam headlamps
3. Direction indicators/Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

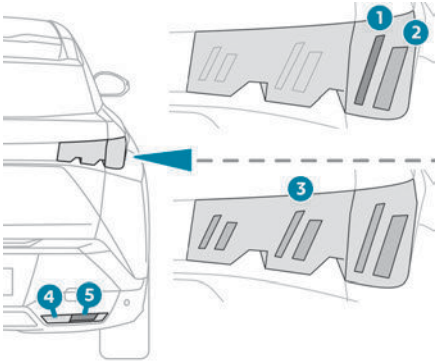
Model with Peugeot Pixel LED headlamps



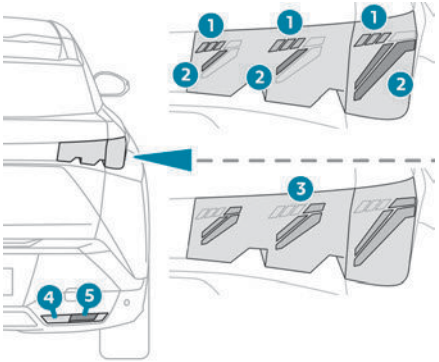
1. Dipped beam/main beam headlamps with Pixel module
2. Direction indicators/Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

Rear Lights

Model with LED lamps

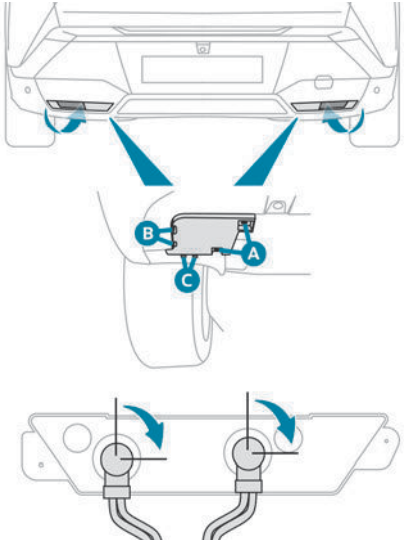


Model with Full LED 3D lamps



1. Direction indicators (LED)
2. Brake lamps (LED)
3. Sidelamps (LED)
4. Foglamps (P21W)
5. Reversing lamps (P21W)

Reversing lamps/ Foglamps



These bulbs are replaced from inside the rear bumper.

- Remove the 2 fixing screws **A** from the access flap located under the bumper using a Torx screwdriver.
- Press the 2 side hooks **B** with a flat screwdriver to unclip the access flap.
- Tilt the access flap by pulling out the 2 fixing lugs **C** and the side centring pin of the bumper.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
- Turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.

Tip
For easier access to the foglamp holder, first remove the reversing lamp holder.
When refitting the access flap, insert the 2 fixing lugs **C** and the side centring pin into the bumper, before clipping the 2 side hooks **B**.

Warning
When changing the bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust - risk of burns!

Tires and Wheels

Tire Safety Information

The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires.The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Warning
Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as 7 possible.
Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.

Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Tire Pressure

Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tires:

- Tire pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tire specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tire inflation pressure.

Also indicates the paint colour code.

Tip
The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated onthe label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).
In the even of a change in the type of tyres, contact a dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.
For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tires on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.
If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. If directional tires are mounted, ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.
Tires age, even if they are not used.
We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tires that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tire combination requirements must be used.
If the wheel covers and tires used are not factory approved, the tires must not have a rim protection ridge.
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

Warning
Use of unsuitable tires or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheel rims: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.
Temporary spare wheel: Do not use wheel covers

Tire Chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

Warning
Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.

They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Tip
Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Only use chains that have been designed to be fitted to the type of wheel on the vehicle:

Original tire size	Maximum link size
225/60 R18	9 mm
225/55 R19	9 mm
235/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R20	Polaire PSGB 140

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Tip
It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

Warning
Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Wheel Changing

Vehicle storage

Long-time Storage Of Hybrid - Electric Vehicle

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

- Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the cluster.
- Do not plug in the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between −10 °C and 30 °C.
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (−) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialise the power windows.
- Check tire pressure
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

Bodywork-Exterior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

Warning
Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

Tip
When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

Warning
When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console.
Be vigilant! To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

High Gloss Paint

Warning
Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Tip
Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

Warning
Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Tip
Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior care

Fabric Parts

Alcantara®

Alcantara® is an elegant and practical material which is very resistant and easy to maintain.

Warning
Do not use printed cloths or printed absorbent paper.
Do not use steam-cleaning systems.

Tip
Remove dust from the Alcantara® parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Clean the Alcantara®, without rubbing too vigorously, with a white cotton cloth which is slightly damp.

To find out which products and procedures to use on different types of stains, refer to the "**Textile - Stain removal**" section.
For more information, go to the Alcantara® trademark website: www.alcantara.com.

Leather Surfaces

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

Warning
Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

Tip
Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Textile

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.

Maintenance

Warning
Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia).
Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

Tip
Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Stain removal

Warning
Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

Tip
Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.
Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

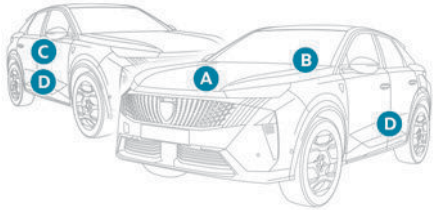
Tip
Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:

– Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
– Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
– Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
– Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
– Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
– Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
– Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.
For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identfication Number (VIN)

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

Stamped on the chassis.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

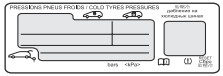
Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tires/paint code label.

Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tires:
– Tire pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tire specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tire inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint colour code.

> **Tip**
> The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated onthe label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).
> In the even of a change in the type of tyres, contact a dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Tyre information label



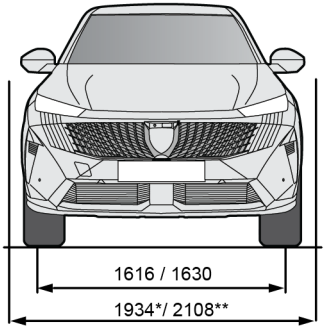
The tire pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.
The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.
Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

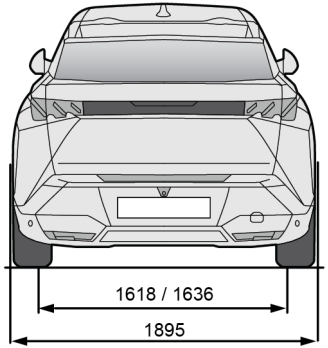
Vehicle Data

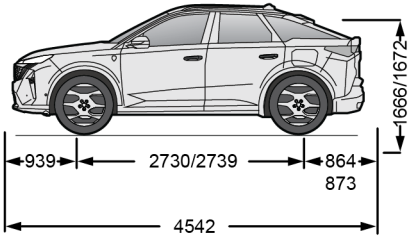
Dimensions

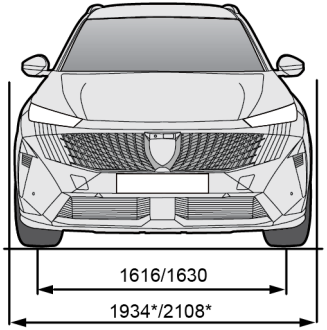
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

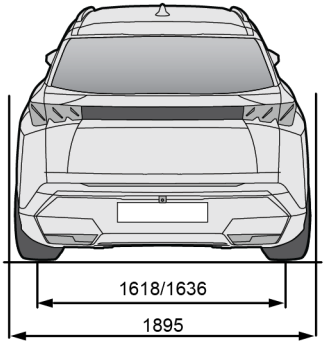
	3008	5008		
		ICE / Hybrid 48 V	PHEV	BEV
Front track width on the ground	1616/1630	1616	1630	1630
Width	1934*/2108**	1934*/2108*	1934*/2108*	1934*/2108**
Rear track width on the ground	1618/1636	1618	1636	1636
Max width of rear track (pneumatic outer sidewall)	1895	1895	1895	1895
Front overhang	939	939	939	939
Wheelbase	2730/2739	2894	2904	2901
Rear overhang	864/873	958	948	951
Vehicle length	4542	4791	4791	4791
Vehicle max height (with antenna base plate)	1666/1672	1731	1739	1735
* With folded mirrors. ** With unfolded mirrors.				

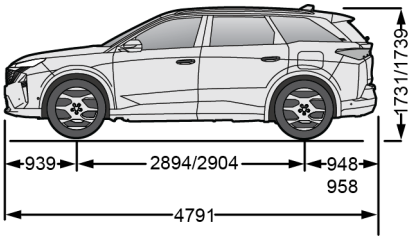

1616 / 1630
1934*/ 2108**


1618 / 1636
1895


1666/1672
939
2730/2739
864
873
4542


1616/1630
1934*/2108*


1618/1636
1895


1731/1739
939
2894/2904
948
958
4791

Engine data

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

Tip
The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, as defined by Regulation EU 715/2007.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

Warning
When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Warning
Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Warning
For Hybrid 48 V models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Engines and towed loads - ICE

	3008	3008	5008	5008
Engines	**Petrol 180 EAT6**	**Petrol 180 S&S EAT6**	**Petrol 180 EAT6**	**Petrol 180 S&S EAT6**
Gearboxes	**EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)**	**EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)**	**EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)**	**EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)**
Codes	EP6LTCM AT6III 180 hp	EP6LTCM AT6III STT 180 hp	EP6LTCM AT6III 180 hp	EP6LTCM AT6III 180 hp
Model codes:	KBDGH8/9	KBDGH7	KBDGH8/9	KBDGH7
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	132	132	132	132
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	600	600
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	80	80	80	80

Engines and towed loads - Hybrid 48 V

	3008	5008	3008	5008
	HYBRID 145 ch Automatic		**HYBRID 145 ch Automatic**	
Codes	EB2LTDH2 EDCT6 Euro 6.4		EB2LTDH2 EDCT6	
Model codes	KAHPY1		KAHPY	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1000 - 1200	750 (5)-1000 (6)	600	
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	600*	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	80	80	80	
Gearbox	Electric dual-clutch automatic 6-speed			
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199			
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	100			
Fuel	Unleaded			
Electric motor				
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets			
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	15,6			
Traction battery				
Technology	Lithium-Ion			
Voltage (Volt DC)	48			
Installed capacity (kWh)	0.9			
Combined power (kW CE/chCE)	107/145			

With towing device fitted as an accessory. (5)
With factory- fitted towing device. (6)
According to destination. *

Engines and towed loads - PHEV

	3008	**5008**
	Plug-in Hybrid 195 ch Automatic	
Codes	EP6LTCHPD EDCT7 FWD Euro 6.4	EP6LTCHPD EDCT7 FWD Euro 6.4
Model codes:	KBDGK4	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1550	1300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	80	80
Gearbox	Electric dual-clutch automatic 7-speed	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1598	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110	
Fuel	Unleaded	
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	92	
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	
Voltage (Volts AC)	240-400	
Installed capacity (kWh)	21,5	
Combined power (kW)	**143**	

Engines and towed loads - BEV

	3008		5008		3008		5008		3008	5008
	Electric 210 Standard Range				**Electric 325 Dual motor Standard Range**				**Electric 230 Long Range** **Electric 210 Long Range**	
Codes	ELEC ZLC RGML 210 hp FWD				ELEC ZLX RGML_eRAD 325 hp AWD				ELEC ZLC RGML 230 hp	
Model codes: KC...	ZKZ				ZKZ				ZKM ZKZ	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600*	1250	600*	1050*	600	1350	600*	1000	1200	1000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600*	750	600*	750	600*	750	600*	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	80
Electric motor										
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets				Synchronous with permanent magnets				Synchronous with permanent magnets	
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	157/213				239/325				170/231	

	3008		5008		3008	5008	3008	5008
	Electric 210 Standard Range				**Electric 325 Dual motor Standard Range**		**Electric 230 Long Range** **Electric 210 Long Range**	
Traction battery								
Technology	Lithium-Ion				Lithium-Ion		Lithium-Ion	
Useful capacity (kWh)	73 Battery M	73 Battery M	73 or 82,2 Battery M	73 or 82,2 Battery M	74.8 Battery M	74.8 Battery M	97 (Battery XL)	
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**							
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) / 8 or 16							
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**							
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) / 16 or 32							
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**							
Direct current (DC) voltage	400							

	3008	5008	3008	5008	3008	5008
	Electric 210 Standard Range		**Electric 325 Dual motor Standard Range**		**Electric 230 Long Range** **Electric 210 Long Range**	
According to destination. *						

High Voltage Battery

Towing Data

Performance Data

Wheels and Tires

Your vehicle can be fitted with various wheel and tire sizes.
When changing worn tires, ensure that you select a replacement that is suitable for your vehicle.

Compatibility of Wheels And Tires

E.g. **215/60 R17 96H**

215	tire width, mm
60	cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %
R	belt type: Radial
RF	type: RunFlat
15	wheel diameter, inches
91	load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 615 kg
T	speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q	up to 100 mph (160 km/h)
S	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 150 mph (240 km/h)
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

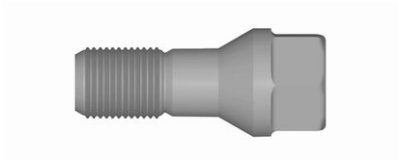
Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle.
The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload.
Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tightening Torques

Warning
Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Depending on version, there are two sizes of bolt:

Tightening torque for M12 bolts is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for M14 bolts is ca. 130 Nm.

Tire Pressures

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system.
The tire pressure information label on the left or right door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.
The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.
Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- Identify the payload
- Identify the respective tire

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations.

For the tires approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

Warning
If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

Warning
For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.
Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

Temperature dependency

The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.
The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has radio equipments that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the radio equipments listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU.
No regional restriction applies on putting the equipment into service regarding Article 10 § 10 Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address :
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Radars

Manufacturer :

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Platz 1

70839 Gerlingen-Schillerhöhe

Germany

Operating Frequen-cies	Max power
76.0 - 77.0 GHz	20,9 dBm | 21,4 dBm

Radio & Infotainment system

Manufacturer :

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale A. Borletti 61/63, Corbetta

Italy

BT :

Operating Frequen-cies	Max power
2402 MHz to 2480 MHz	2.34 dBm

WiFi :

Operating Frequen-cies	Max power
5725 MHz to 5875 MHz	20 MHz BW : 5745 MHz → 12.86 *dBm*
	40 MHz BW : 5755 MHz → 12.48 *dBm*
	80 MHz BW : 5775 MHz → 11.84 *dBm*

Telematic box

BSRF

Manufacturer :

Continental Automotive GmbH

Siemensstrasse 12

93055 Regensburg

Germany

Operating Frequen-cies	Max power
FM: 87,5 - 108 MHZ	GSM (33 dBm +/- 2 dB), LTE/WCDMA (23 dBm +/- 2 dB)
AM : 148,5 - 283,5 kHZ, 526,5 - 1606,5 kHz	
DAB : 174 - 240 MHz	
WIFI: 2,4GHz et 5GHz	
LTE(1.4 MHz 3 MHz 5 MHz 10 MHz 15 MHz 20 MHz)	
GNSS: 1559-1610 MHz	

RTBM
Manufacturer :

FIH Co., Ltd No.4, Minsheng St., Tucheng Dist., 236 New Taipei City

Taiwan

Wi-Fi	**802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz)**
Frequencies	Max power

2412 – 2472 MHz	18.83 dBm

Wi-Fi :

Wi-Fi	**802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz)**
Frequencies	Max power
5180 – 5240 MHz	15.99 dBm

SRD :

Frequencies	Max power
5745 – 5825 MHz	13.93 dBm

GSM 900:

Frequencies	Max power
880–915 MHz (transmission)	33 dBm (nominal value)
925–960 MHz (reception)	

GSM 1800:

Frequencies	Max power
1710–1785 MHz (transmission)	30 dBm (nominal value)
1805–1880 MHz (reception)	

WCDMA Band I :

Frequencies	Max power
1920–1980 MHz (transmission)	24 dBm (nominal value)
2110–2170 MHz (reception)	

WCDMA Band VIII:

Frequencies	Max power
880–915 MHz (transmission)	24 dBm
925–960 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 1 :

Frequencies	Max power
1920–1980 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
2110–2170 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 3 :

Frequencies	Max power
1710–1785 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
1805–1880 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 7 :

Frequencies	Max power
2500–2570 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
2620–2690 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 8 :

Frequencies	Max power
880–915 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
925–960 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 20 :

Frequencies	Max power
832–862 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
791–821 MHz (reception)	

LTE FDD Band 28 :

Frequencies	Max power
703–748 MHz (transmission)	23 dBm
758–803 MHz (reception)	

Telecomand & telemetry

Manufacturer :

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance

76, rue Auguste Perret 94046 Créteil - CEDEX

France

Operating Frequencies	Max power
433,05…434,79MHz | 125kHz 2402…2480MHz76- 108 MHz	10 dBm /-6,85 dBm | 125kHz: -7,3 dBm

Radio Antenna

Manufacturer :

ASK Industrie SpA

C.P. 110 c/o U.P. RE2

42121 Reggio Emilia

Italy

Operating Frequencies	Max power
76- 108 MHz	N/A

Wireless Charger

Manufacturer :

FORYOU MULTIMEDIA ELECTRONICS CO., LTD

No.1, North Shangxia Road,

Dongjiang Hi-tech Industry Park 516005

HUIZHOU GUANGDONG PROVINCE P.R.

China

Operating Frequencies	Max power
127.7 kHz	15W

Vehicle data recording and privacy

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.
You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on Brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as the vehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behaviour, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behaviour.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on

components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lamps, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).
- For electric and PHEV vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. Repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.
The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. Garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. Roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system thet continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered. Concerned data is greyed low-resolution picture of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. Speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator perdal position), both sampled every second just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near PEUGEOT-approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.
For more information on the **Event Data Recorder**, please refer to the "**In case of emergency**" section of this document.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used.
The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services - "Over-The- Air" connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided.
Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems.
The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried

out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (thirdparty) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question.
The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the thirdparty services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber.
During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requestor -considered as vehicle's owner- to activate services on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions he has accepted. He can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with his Stellantis account.

Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending on the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view. This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analysed by the Manufacturer"s Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronical components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles. It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of on line services activated on your vehicle. Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying legal obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independently of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to ‘112’ inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel).
This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures.
Inside Europe, the 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.
The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The

rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
In accordance with Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 (“OBFCM”), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).
This data is used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymised and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle’s data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting the Customer Care Centre (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, nonurban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions don't permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the “GSR V2 Regulations”, this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle’s settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The- Air data transmission of current vehicle’s position for accurate speed limit detection.
Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to the Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)

This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as the Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by Belgian authorities to collect and control this data.
This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to the Car-Pass association, upon request by this organism.
For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data use - product quality improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy

Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products.
Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

This Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles (“Privacy Policy”) applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information.
In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com
This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

Index

A

ABS 174, 176
Accelerated charging 5
Wallbox (Electric) 5
Accelerated charging unit 145
Active Safety Brake 200
Adaptive headlamp lighting 54
Adjusting head restraints 20
Adjusting headlamps 51
Adjusting seat 22
Adjusting the air distribution 91, 93
Adjusting the air flow 91, 93
Adjusting the headlamp beam height 51
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 46
Adjusting the lumbar support 23
Adjusting the seat angle 22
Adjusting the temperature 92
Adjusting the time 116
Advice on driving 157, 159
Air conditioning 91
Air conditioning, automatic 92
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 91
Air intake 90, 93, 94
Air vents 90
Airbags 31
Airbags, curtain 32
Airbags, front 31
Airbags, lateral 32
Alarm 14
Amplifier, audio 61
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 174, 176
Antitheft / Immobiliser 16
Applications 97
Armrest, front 61
Armrest, rear 65
Assistance call 213
Assistance, emergency braking 172, 174

B

Battery, 12 V 234
Battery, remote control 10
BEV 5
Blanking screen (snow shield) 159, 230
Blind 59
Bluetooth (hands-free) 111
Bluetooth (telephone) 111
Brake discs 235
Brakes 235
Braking 126
State of charge, battery 4
Braking assistance system 172, 174
Braking, automatic emergency 200

C

Capacity, fuel tank 135
Central locking
Unlocking from the inside 10
Changing a fuse 235
Changing a wheel 215, 217
Changing a wiper blade 234
Charge level indicator (PHEV) 88
Charger, induction 62
Charger, wireless 62
Charging cable 140, 141
Charging connector (Electric) 141
Charging flap (Electric) 141
Charging system (Electric) 139
ChatGPT 109
CHECK 89, 230
Checking the engine oil level 86
Checking the levels 230
Checking tire pressures (using the kit) 224
Checks 230
Checks, routine 230
Child seats 33
Child seats, conventional 35
Child seats, i-Size 35
Child seats, ISOFIX 34
Children 33
Closing the boot 15, 66
Closing the doors 13, 15, 66
Collision Risk Alert 200
Configuration, vehicle 96
Connection, Bluetooth 111
Control unit 141, 145
Control, emergency boot release 66
Control, heated seats 23, 25
Controls, steering mounted 129
Cruise control 165
Cruise control by speed limit recognition .. 168
Cruise control, adaptive 167, 168, 208
Cup holder 60

D

Date (setting) 116
Daytime running lamps 56
Deactivating the passenger airbag 44
Deadlocking 9, 13
Deferred charging (Electric) 141

Defrosting 94, 95
Defrosting, front 94
Defrosting, rear screen 95
Demisting 94, 95
Diagnosis, vehicle 89
Dipstick 86
Direction indicators (turn signals) 51
Display screen, instrument panel 73
Domestic charging 139, 144
Door pockets 60
Drive Assist Plus 167
Drive selector (Electric) 132
Drive, electric 139, 250
Driver Attention Warning by timer 199
Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD) 199
Driving 157, 164
Driving aid shortcuts 164
Driving aids (recommendations) 162
Driving aids camera (warnings) 162
Driving modes 133
Driving modes (Electric) 134
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 175

E

e-Auto mode (Hybrid) 122
e-Save function (energy reserve) 88, 98
EBFD 174, 176
ECO mode 133, 134
Electronic brake force distribution
(EBFD) 174, 176
Emergency braking assistance (EBA)
.....125, 172, 174
Emergency call 213, 260
Emergency switching off 119, 121
Emergency warning lamps 213, 215
Energy flows 86
Energy recovery 75, 126
Energy saving (mode)
Energy saving mode 6
Engine 235
Engine compartment 232
Engine, 48 V hybrid 122, 248
Engine, petrol 133, 232, 247
Engines 246–250
ESC (electronic stability control) 174
EV Routing 110
Event data recorder (EDR) 1, 228
Extended traffic sign recognition 209

F

Fatigue detection 198
Favourite driving functions 164
Filling the fuel tank 135
Filter, air 235
Filter, oil 235
Filter, passenger compartment 234
Fitting a wheel 220
Fitting roof bars 149
Fittings, boot 63
Fittings, front 60
Fittings, interior 60
Flap, charging 146, 147
Flap, fuel filler 135
Flashing indicators 51
Flat bed (towing) 150
Floor, boot, adjustable 65
Fluid, brake 232
Fluid, engine coolant 230
Foglamps, rear 55
Folding the rear seats 25, 26
Rear bench seat 24
Frequency (radio) 104
Fuel 135
Fuel (tank) 135
Fuel consumption
Histogramme, fuel consumption .....
Histogramme, fuel consumption 4
Fuel level, low 135
Fuses 235

G

Gauge, fuel 135
Gear lever 74
Gear shift indicator 74
Gearbox, automatic 126, 128, 132, 235
Gearbox, dual-clutch automatic 128
Glove box 61

H

Hands-free access 68
Hands-free tailgate 68
Hazard warning lamps 213
Head restraints, front 20
Head restraints, rear 20, 26
Headlamps adjustment 51
Headlamps, automatic dipping 57
Headlamps, automatic operation 56
Headlamps, main beam 57
Heated and ventilated seats 23
Heated steering wheel 46
Heating 90
Heating, programmable 95
Hi-Fi system 61
High voltage 139
Recharging the traction battery (BEV) . 139
Hill start assist 205

Horn 46
Hybrid 48 V system 4
Hybrid, 48 V mild 122, 248

I

Ignition 120
Ignition on 120
Immobiliser, electronic 16
Indicator, coolant temperature 86
Indicator, engine oil level 86
Indicator, service 85
Indicators, direction 51, 188
Inflating tires 237, 242
Inflating tires and accessories (using the kit) 222, 224
Infrared camera 162
Instrument panel 76
ISOFIX mountings 34, 37, 40, 43

J

Jack 217, 219
Jump starting 228

K

Key 8, 11, 12
Key not recognised 120
Key with remote control 8, 16, 119
Key, electronic 12
Keyless Entry and Starting 12, 120
Kit, hands-free 111
Kit, puncture repair 215
Kit, temporary puncture repair 215, 217

L

Labels, identification 242
Lamps with Full LED technology 51
Lamps, parking 51
Leather (care) 241
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 51, 56, 236
Level, brake fluid 232
Level, engine coolant 86, 230
Level, engine oil 86, 235
Level, screenwash fluid 48, 232
Levels and checks 230
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 51, 56, 236
Lighting dimmer 89
Lighting, boot 59, 64
Lighting, guide-me home 58
Lighting, mood 59
Lighting, welcome 58
Load reduction mode 150
Load space cover 64
Loading 64, 149
Locating your vehicle 9
Locking 9
Locking from the inside 10
Locking the doors 11
Log, alerts 89
Lumbar 23

M

Maintenance, routine 163, 230
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 162
Manual Front Seats 22
Markings, identification 242
Massage function 24
Massage, multi-point 24
Mat 63, 163
Minimum traction battery charge level (Electric) 88
Mirror, vanity 61
Mirrors, door 18
Mobile application 96
Motor, electric 134, 232, 249, 250
Mountings, ISOFIX 34, 37, 40

N

Net, high load retaining 64
Net, luggage retaining 64
Normal mode 133, 134

O

Obstacle detection 195
Oil change 231
Oil consumption 231
Oil, engine 231
On-board tools 215
Opening the boot 9
Opening the doors 9, 12, 66
Overheating 138

P

Pads, brake 235
Paint 242
Paint colour code 242
Parking (sensors) 195
Parking brake, electric 123, 235
Parking sensors, audible and visual . 191, 195
Parking sensors, front 196
Parking sensors, rear 195

Passenger compartment temperature preconditioning (PHEV) 95, 96
Pedestrian horn (Electric) 158
Personalisation 73
Peugeot Pixel LED Technology 52
PHEV engine 249
PHEV system 5
Phone 114
Plates, identification 242
Plug&Charge 149
Port, USB 62, 65
Post Collision Safety Brake 174
Power 75
Power flow 86
Power indicator (PHEV) 75
Pressures, tires 237, 242
Profiles 100, 103
Protecting children 32, 33
Proximity Keyless Entry and Start 12
Public fast charging station 144
Puncture 222

R

Radar (warnings) 162
Radio 104, 105
Range 2
Reading lamps, touch-sensitive 59
Rear cross traffic alert 193
Rear screen (demisting) 95
Recharging the traction battery 137, 141
Recirculation, air 94
Recorder, trip distance 74, 89
Reduction of electrical load (mode) 150
Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) 126
Reinitialising the remote control 12
Reinitialising the under-inflation detection system 211
Reminder, lighting on 56
Remote control 8, 9
Remotely operable functions (BEV) 117
Remotely operable functions (PHEV) 98
Removing a wheel 219
Removing the mat 63
Replacing fuses 235
Replacing the air filter 235
Replacing the oil filter
  Oil, engine 235
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 234
Resetting the trip 76
Rev counter 74
Reversing camera 197
Road sign recognition 205
Roof bars 149

S

Safety, children 32, 33, 44
Screens, very cold conditions 159, 230
Screenwash 48
Screenwash, front 48
Seat angle 21, 22
Seat belts 27
Seat belts, rear 27
Seat belts, three-point 30
Seats, front 22, 23
Seats, heated 23
Selector, gear 74, 126, 128, 132
Sensors (warnings) 163
Serial number, vehicle 242
Servicing 85, 230
Settings, equipment 96
Shield, snow 159, 230
Sidelamps 51, 236
Silent vehicle warning sound (Electric) 158
Smartphone 62, 106, 113
  Mobile application 117
Snow chains 160, 238
Snow screen 159, 230
Socket, 12 V 60
Socket, 12 V accessory 60, 65
Speakers 61
Speed limit recognition 205, 261
Speed limiter 209
Speedometer Speedometer 163
Sport mode 133, 134
Spotlamps, side 58
Stability control (ESC) 174
Starting the engine 119
Starting the vehicle 119
Starting/Stopping the vehicle 119
State of charge, battery 86
Station, radio 104
Steering wheel (adjustment) 46
Stop & Start 91
Stopping the vehicle 119, 128, 131
Storage 61
Storage box 65
Storage wells 65
Storing driving positions 19
Stowing rings 63
Sun visor 61
Sunroof, panoramic 59
Sunshine sensor 91
Super-fast charging (Electric) 144, 250
Suspension 235
Switching off the engine 119
Synchronising the remote control 12

T

Tables of engines 247–250
Tailgate 66
Tank, fuel 135
Technical data 247–250
Telephone 111
Temperature pre-conditioning 95, 96
Temperature, coolant 86
Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric) 88
Thermal comfort equipment 88
Third row seats 26
Time (setting) 116
Tire under-inflation detection 210
Tires 237, 242
Tool box 65, 215
Tools 215
Top Tether (fixing) 34, 37, 40
Total distance recorder 74, 89
Touch screen 96
Towball, quickly detachable 154
Towbar 153, 154, 175
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 154
Towed loads 247–250
Towing 150
Towing another vehicle 153
Towing the vehicle 150
Traction battery 138
Traction battery (BEV) 75
Traction battery (Electric) 5, 250
Traction battery charge 143
Traction control (ASR) 175
Trailer 153, 154, 175
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 175
Tread depth 238
Triangle, warning 215
Trip computer 76
Trip Planner 76

U

Under-inflation (detection) 210
Unlocking 8, 12
Unlocking the boot 9, 13
Unlocking the doors 10
Unlocking the tailgate 9, 13
Updating the time 116

V

Vehicle to Load (V2L) 148
Ventilation 90
Visibility 94, 95
Visiopark 191, 197
Visiopark 1 197

W

Wall socket (domestic network) 139
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened 28
Warning lamp, seat belts 28
Warning lamps 213
Washing 163
Welcome lighting 58
Wheel covers 238
Window controls 17
Windscreen, heated 95
Wiper blades (changing) 233
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 49
Wipers, windscreen 47

Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles
Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by these legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.
43 rue Jean-Pierre TIMBAUD, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE
https://www.peugeot.com Limited company or capital of 172,711,700 € - R.C.S. VERSAILLES: 552 144 503
Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT

www.peugeot.com

Printed in
the EU
11-25

PEUGEOT & TotalEnergies, a partnership in performance!

For more than 25 years of partnership, TotalEnergies and PEUGEOT have pushed the limits of performance in sports competition with historic victories, in both endurance racing and rallies. Today, the two brands continue their shared motorsport adventure by setting out to conquer the 24h of Le Mans and the FIA World Endurance Championship in the Hypercar category. PEUGEOT recommends high-tech Quartz lubricants exclusively for the protection of its engines throughout their life. TotalEnergies therefore equips PEUGEOT vehicles with Quartz lubricants, from their first filling in the factory to the approved maintenance networks, in order to guarantee their optimal day-to-day operation. PEUGEOT & TotalEnergies: official partners in performance!

Keep your engine younger for longer!

TOTAL QUARTZ INEO XTRA FIRST 0W-20 is a very high-performance lubricant resulting from the combined work of the PEUGEOT and TotalEnergiesR&D teams. Its innovative technology extends your engine's life while reaching significant fuel savings and thus limiting CO2 emissions*. The product is now available in new packaging**, which is made of 50% recycled material and 100% recyclable.

* This oil information is for reference only. Please refer to your maintenance schedule to verify the specific oil requirements for your vehicle. * * 1L & 5L produced in Europe.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS **TotalEnergies**

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT

P3508CO2511en-1